

## Introduction to Galatians

### Overview

The apostle Paul wrote this letter to Christians in Galatia. Galatia was in the area of Asia Minor, now called Turkey. Paul started several churches in Galatia. Scholars do not know exactly when Paul wrote this letter. Some scholars think this was the first letter Paul wrote.

See: [Apostle](#); [Church](#) See Map: Galatians 6

### Who wrote this letter?

Paul wrote this letter (see 1:1; 5:2).

### Who did Paul write to?

Paul wrote this letter to Christians in Galatia. These people became Christians because Paul told them about the gospel and showed them how to live in the same way Jesus lived (see 1:11 and 4:13). He became their friend and a leader.

See: [Gospel](#)

### What did Paul write about in this letter?

In this letter, Paul told Christians what they needed to do to honor God. That is, they needed to obey Jesus' command and do the right things. Paul explained to the Christians in Galatians how God saved them from their sins. He also did this in the Book of Romans did. God saved Christians because he loved them (see: John 3:16). God saves people from their sins when they believe in Jesus (see 4:4-7).

Paul wanted Christians to know that God loves all Christians in the same way. He loves them because they believe in Jesus. God does not have more love for Jewish Christians than he does for Gentile Christians. He does not have more love for men than he does for women. He does not have more love for rich people than he does for poor people. He loves Christians because they are his children (see: 3:28).

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Children of God](#)

### Why did Paul write this letter?

Paul wrote Galatians to correct wrong thoughts about the gospel. In this way, Galatians is like Second Corinthians. Paul wanted the Galatians to know the truth of the gospel (see 2:5, 2:14). Paul heard that the Christians in Galatia were confused about what a person had to do to be a Christian. They were confused because a group of teachers called Judaizers had come to their churches. These people taught wrong things about God. They taught things that were not the same as what Paul taught when he lived in Galatia. They taught that to be Christians, people who were not Jewish needed to be circumcised and follow other Jewish laws. Their false teachings also confused the Christians in Galatia about other things such as slavery and what women could do in the church.

Paul wrote this letter to Christians in Galatia to get rid of their confusion. Advice to translators: A Judaizer was a person who taught that a person was not saved unless they became a Jew. That is, they said that they had to be circumcised and follow the Jewish Law.

See: [Gospel](#); [Judaizer](#); [Circumcise \(Circumcision\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Serve \(Servant, Slave\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### Outline of Galatians

1. Paul greeted his readers (1:1-9)
2. What Paul taught (1:10-2:21)
3. What Paul wanted the Galatians to know (3:1-5:12)
4. How the Galatians needed to live in the Holy Spirit (5:13-6:10)
5. Final warning (6:11-18)

# Galatians

## Chapter 1

<sup>1</sup> Paul, an apostle—not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead— <sup>2</sup> and all the brothers with me, to the churches of Galatia:

<sup>3</sup> Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ, <sup>4</sup> who gave himself for our sins so that he might deliver us from this present evil age, according to the will of our God and Father, <sup>5</sup> to him be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

<sup>6</sup> I am amazed that you are turning away so quickly from him who called you by the grace of Christ. I am amazed that you are turning to a different gospel, <sup>7</sup> not that there is another gospel, but there are some men who cause you trouble and want to distort the gospel of Christ. <sup>8</sup> But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim to you a gospel other than the one we proclaimed to you, let him be cursed. <sup>9</sup> As we have said before, so now I say again, "If someone proclaims to you a gospel other than the one you received, let him be cursed." <sup>10</sup> For am I now seeking the favor of men or of God? Am I seeking to please men? If I am still trying to please men, I am not a servant of Christ.

<sup>11</sup> For I want you to know, brothers, that the gospel I proclaimed is not man's gospel. <sup>12</sup> I did not receive it from any man, nor was I taught it. Instead, it was by revelation of Jesus Christ to me. <sup>13</sup> You have heard about my former life in Judaism, how I was persecuting the church of God beyond measure and that I was trying to destroy it. <sup>14</sup> I advanced in Judaism beyond many of those who were my own age, from out of my own people. That is how extremely zealous I was for the traditions of my fathers. <sup>15</sup> But when God, who had set me apart from my mother's womb, and who called me through his grace, was pleased <sup>16</sup> to reveal his Son in me, so that I might preach him among the Gentiles, I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. <sup>17</sup> I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus.

<sup>18</sup> Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to get to know Cephas and I stayed with him fifteen days. <sup>19</sup> But I saw none of the other apostles except James, the Lord's brother. <sup>20</sup> In what I write to you, I assure you before God that I am not lying. <sup>21</sup> Then I went to the regions of Syria and Cilicia. <sup>22</sup> I was still not known by face to the churches of Judea that are in Christ. <sup>23</sup> They only heard it being said, "The man who once persecuted us is now proclaiming as good news the faith he once tried to destroy." <sup>24</sup> So they glorified God because of me.

## Galatians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was "not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones." Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Heresy

God eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. They might not be saved. They should be treated as non-Christians. (See: save, eternity, goodnews and condemn and curse)

#### Paul's qualifications

Some people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But God still needed to

save him and show him the true gospel. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: lawofmoses)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "You are turning so quickly to a different gospel"

The Book of Galatians is one of Paul's earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church.

---

## Galatians 1 Commentary

### 1:1-5

#### How did Paul write this letter differently than his other letters?

[1:1]

In Galatians, Paul did not write in the same way he wrote at the beginning of his other letters. While he began this letter with a greeting he did not say that he was thankful for them.

When Paul lived, most letters were written in a specific order. Usually, the writer wrote his name. Then he wrote about the people to whom he wrote. Then he greeted those people. He normally finished the greeting by writing that he was thankful for him. Then he wrote the rest of the letter. Paul followed this pattern for all of his letters, but not Galatians.

#### How did Paul become an "apostle"?

[1:1]

Paul was an "apostle" because Jesus made him one. Paul lived at the same time as the other apostles. Paul once persecuted the church, but Jesus changed him. He went to Damascus to persecute Christians there. He saw a vision of Jesus risen from the dead. Jesus spoke to him and changed him. Then he told Paul what to do (see Acts 9). He believed in Jesus and became a Christian. Later, he began preaching and teaching as an apostle.

**Advice to translators:** "Risen from the dead" means that Jesus died and came back to life.

See: [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#) ; [Vision](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#)

See Map: Damascus

### 1:4

#### Why did Paul say the present time was evil?

[1:4]

Some scholars think Paul wrote that the present time is evil because the Jews thought the world was divided into two time periods. The time they lived in was the first period. This thought this was an evil period. The second period was a time to come. That is, the time when the Messiah returned. The Messiah makes everything right and good when he returns because he will remove evil from the world.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### 1:6-10

#### Why did Paul say there was a "different gospel"?

[1:6]

Some Jews called Judaizers taught a "different gospel." This is because they taught that Gentiles had to be circumcised and follow the Jewish Laws. Only then could they live together with God forever in heaven. These Jews said that Gentiles must live as if they were Jews. Paul taught that only believing in

Jesus saved someone from their sins. Nothing else a person does can help people to live with God forever in heaven. Paul was angry because he heard that the Galatians began to believe in this "different gospel."

Paul preached the gospel to the Galatians and started churches in Galatia. Paul taught that someone only has to believe in Jesus in order to be a Christian. Paul told the Galatians that no one earned the ability to live together with God in heaven because of the things they did. This included following the Law of Moses.

See: [Judaizer](#); [Gospel](#); [Gentile](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Judaizer](#)

### **Why did Paul write that false teachers needed to be "cursed"?**

[1:8]

When Paul wrote that the false teachers needed to be "cursed," he wanted to say that God was going to condemn and punish them. He wrote this to say that what the false teachers said was harmful to the true gospel. These things caused Christians to not understand how they were saved from their sins. Paul wanted Christians to know that these things were so bad that the people who taught them needed to go to hell.

Paul also used the word "cursed" in Romans 9:3, 1 Corinthians 12:3, and 1 Corinthians 16:22. Paul wanted his readers to understand that he spoke for God, and God was angry with those who did not follow what Paul told them to do.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Gospel](#); [Hell](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### **1:11-17**

#### **Why did Paul write these verses?**

[1:11]

Paul wrote 1:11-17 so that the Galatians knew that nothing they did made God save them from their sins. Paul used himself as an example. Paul kept all of the Jewish laws. In fact, he followed the Law of Moses very well. He did that because he thought the things he did or did not do pleased God. He was so good that he thought God forgave his sins and accepted him because of what he did.

Paul wanted the Galatians to know keeping the law in this way did not earn him God's favor. God saved Paul from his sins only because he believed in Jesus. God favored Paul because of Jesus, not because of what Paul had done. Paul wanted the Galatians to know that this was the only way for God to favor them.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

#### **Why did Paul tell his readers he did not "consult flesh and blood" or the apostles?**

[1:16]

Paul said that he did not get his commands from "flesh and blood" because he wanted Christians to know his commands were directly from God. They were not from another person. He wanted them to know God told him to give these commands. Although he spoke with other Christians, such as Ananias, he did not study Christian beliefs with anyone. He did not even talk with any of the first apostles about them. He only spoke with God.

See: [Apostle](#); [Apostle](#)

#### **Why did Paul say he was going "up" to Jerusalem?**

[1:17]

Jerusalem was a higher place on the earth than where Paul was. So when he traveled to Jerusalem, he was going "up" to get there.

## 1:18-24

### Why did Paul write these verses?

Paul wrote these verses again so the Christians in Galatia knew that God gave him everything he taught. He did not go anywhere or talk to anybody to get his thoughts from other people. A few years after he saw Jesus and began to preach the gospel, he spoke with Peter and James. But they did not teach him the things he taught. He did not know anyone from the churches in Judea. God gave him everything he said and wrote.

See: [Gospel](#); [Gospel](#)

### What did Paul do for "three years"?

[1:18]

The Bible does not say exactly what Paul did for those three years. Some scholars think Paul lived in the desert of Arabia while Jesus taught him.

Some scholars think Paul wrote about "three years" because he wanted his readers to think about the three years the disciples spent with Jesus while He was on earth. So Paul wanted to say that he had the same kind of training that the other apostles had.

See: [Apostle](#)

See Map: Arabia

### Who is Cephas?

[1:18]

"Cephas" was one of Jesus' disciples and an apostle. The Bible normally calls him "Peter." Peter is his name in the Greek language. In Aramaic his name was Cephas. Both of the names mean "rock."

### Who is James?

[1:19]

James was the half-brother of Jesus (see: Matthew 13:55; Mark 6:3). This is not the disciple who was the brother of John. At first, James, the half-brother of Jesus, did not believe in Jesus (see: John 7:5). But later, he believed in Jesus and became a leader of the church.

---

## Galatians 01

### General Information:

Paul, an apostle, writes this letter to the churches in the area of Galatia. Unless noted otherwise, all instances of "you" and "your" in this letter refer to the Galatians and are plural.

### who raised him

"who caused him to live again"

## Galatians 02

### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters"

## Galatians 03

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Galatians 04

### for our sins

"Sins" is a metonym for the punishment for sin.

Alternate translation: "to take the punishment we deserved because of our sins"

### that he might deliver us from this present evil age

Here "this ... age" represents the powers at work in the age. Alternate translation: "that he might bring us to a place of safety from the evil powers at work in the world today"

**our God and Father**

This refers to "God our Father." He is our God and our Father.

**Galatians 05**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 06**

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul gives his reason for writing this letter: he reminds them to continue to understand the gospel.

**I am amazed**

"I am surprised" or "I am shocked." Paul was disappointed that they were doing this.

**you are turning away so quickly from him**

Here "turning away ... from him" is a metaphor for started to doubt or no longer trust God. Alternate translation: "you are so quickly starting to doubt him"

**him who called you**

"God, who called you"

**called**

Here this means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to serve him, and to proclaim his message of salvation through Jesus.

**by the grace of Christ**

"because of Christ's grace" or "because of Christ's gracious sacrifice"

**you are turning to a different gospel**

Here "turning to" is a metaphor that means to start to believe something. Alternate translation: "you are instead starting to believe a different gospel"

**Galatians 07**

**some men**

"some people"

**Galatians 08**

**But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim ... let him be cursed**

Paul said this to show how strongly he felt about anyone who might proclaim a gospel other than the one he had proclaimed. If anyone would do that, that person should be cursed. Alternate translation: "But even if we or an angel from heaven were to proclaim ... let him be cursed"

**But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim**

The word "even" shows that Paul did not believe that they or an angel from heaven would ever proclaim a different gospel. But he includes himself and angels in his statement to emphasize how

wrong it would be for anyone to proclaim a different gospel.

**other than the one**

"different from the gospel" or "different from the message"

**let him be cursed**

"God should punish that person forever." If your language has a common way of calling a curse down on someone, you should use that.

**Galatians 09**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 10**

**For am I now seeking the favor of men or of God? Am I seeking to please men?**

These rhetorical questions expect the answer "no." Alternate translation: "I do not seek the favor of men, but instead I seek the favor of God. I am not seeking to please men."

**If I am still trying to please men, I am not a servant of Christ**

Both the "if" phrase and the "then" phrase are contrary to fact. "I am not still trying to please men; I am a servant of Christ" or "If I were still trying to please men, then I would not be a servant of Christ"

**Galatians 11**

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul explains that he did not learn the gospel from others; he learned it from Jesus Christ.

**brothers**

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

**is not man's gospel**

By using this phrase, Paul was not trying to say that Jesus Christ is not himself human. Because Christ is both man and God, however, he is not a sinful human being. Paul is writing about where the gospel came from; it did not come from sinful human beings, but it came from Jesus Christ.

**Galatians 12**

**it was by revelation of Jesus Christ to me**

Possible meanings are 1) "Jesus Christ himself revealed the gospel to me" or 2) "God made me know the gospel when he showed me who Jesus Christ was."

**Galatians 13**

**former life**

"behavior at one time" or "prior life" or "earlier life"

## Galatians 14

### **I advanced**

This metaphor pictures Paul as being ahead of other Jews his age in their goal to be perfect Jews.

### **those who were my own age**

"the Jewish people who are the same age as I am"

### **my fathers**

"my ancestors"

## Galatians 15

### **and who called me through his grace**

Possible meanings of "through his grace" are 1) this tells why God called Paul. Alternate translation: "and who called me to serve him because he is gracious" or 2) this tells how God called Paul. Alternate translation: "and who called me by means of his grace."

## Galatians 16

### **to reveal his Son in me**

Possible meanings are 1) "to allow me to know his Son" or 2) "to show the world through me that Jesus is God's Son."

### **Son**

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

### **preach him**

"proclaim that he is God's Son" or "preach the good news about God's Son"

### **consult with flesh and blood**

This is an expression that means talking with other people. Alternate translation: "ask people to help me understand the message"

## Galatians 17

### **go up to Jerusalem**

"go to Jerusalem." Jerusalem was in a region of high hills, making it necessary to climb many hills in order to get there, and so it was common to describe travel to Jerusalem as "going up to Jerusalem."

## Galatians 18

### **General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Galatians 19

### **I saw none of the other apostles except James**

This double negative emphasizes that James was the only apostle whom Paul saw. Alternate translation: "I saw only one of the other apostles, and that was James" or "the only other apostle I saw was James"

## Galatians 20

### **before God**

Paul wants the Galatians to understand that Paul is completely serious and that he knows that God hears what he says and will judge him if he does not tell the truth.

### **In what I write to you, I assure you before God that I am not lying**

Paul uses litotes to emphasize that he is telling the truth. Alternate translation: "I am not lying to you in the messages I write to you" or "in the things I write to you I am telling you the truth"

## Galatians 21

### **the regions of Syria and Cilicia**

"the parts of the world called Syria and Cilicia"

## Galatians 22

### **I was still not known by face to the churches of Judea that are in Christ**

"No one in the churches of Judea that are in Christ knew what I looked like" or "None of the people in the churches of Judea that are in Christ had ever met me"

## Galatians 23

### **They only heard it being said**

"They only knew what they heard others saying about me"

## Galatians 24

### **General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## ULB Translation Questions

### Galatians 1:1

**How did Paul become an apostle?**

Paul became an apostle through Jesus Christ and God the Father.

### Galatians 1:4

**From what have believers in Jesus Christ been delivered?**

Believers in Jesus Christ have been delivered from this present evil age.

### Galatians 1:6

**With what is Paul amazed with the church in Galatia?**

Paul is amazed that they have turned so quickly to a different gospel.

### Galatians 1:7

**How many true gospels are there?**

There is only one true gospel, the gospel of Christ.

### Galatians 1:8

**What does Paul say should happen to anyone proclaiming a different gospel than the gospel of Christ?**

Paul says anyone proclaiming a different gospel should be cursed.

### Galatians 1:9

**What does Paul say should happen to anyone proclaiming a different gospel than the gospel of Christ?**

Paul says anyone proclaiming a different gospel should be cursed.

### Galatians 1:10

**Servants of Christ must seek the approval of whom first?**

Servants of Christ must seek the approval of God first.

### Galatians 1:12

**How did Paul receive the knowledge of the gospel of Christ?**

Paul received the gospel of Christ by revelation from Jesus Christ directly to himself.

### Galatians 1:13

**What was Paul doing in his life before he received the revelation of the gospel of Christ?**

Paul was following Judaism zealously, persecuting the church of God.

### Galatians 1:14

**What was Paul doing in his life before he received the revelation of the gospel of Christ?**

Paul was following Judaism zealously, persecuting the church of God.

### Galatians 1:15

**When did God choose Paul to be his apostle?**

God was pleased to choose Paul from his mother's womb to be his apostle.

### Galatians 1:16

**For what purpose did God choose Paul as his apostle?**

God chose Paul as his apostle so that Paul would proclaim Christ among the Gentiles.

### Galatians 1:19

**Where did Paul finally meet some of the other apostles?**

Finally, Paul went to Jerusalem and met the apostles Cephas and James.

### Galatians 1:22

**What were the churches in Judea hearing about Paul?**

The churches in Judea were hearing that Paul, who once persecuted the church, was now proclaiming the faith.

### Galatians 1:23

**What were the churches in Judea hearing about Paul?**

The churches in Judea were hearing that Paul, who once persecuted the church, was now proclaiming the faith.



## Chapter 2

<sup>1</sup> Then after fourteen years I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, taking Titus along with me. <sup>2</sup> I went up because of a revelation and set before them the gospel that I preach among the Gentiles. I spoke privately to those who seemed to be important, in order to make sure that I was not running—or had not run—in vain. <sup>3</sup> But not even Titus, who was with me and who was a Greek, was forced to be circumcised. <sup>4</sup> The false brothers came in secretly to spy on the liberty we have in Christ Jesus. They desired to enslave us, <sup>5</sup> but we did not yield in submission to them for a moment, so that the truth of the gospel would remain with you. <sup>6</sup> But those who seemed to be important (whatever they were does not matter to me, God shows no partiality)—those, I say, who seemed important added nothing to me. <sup>7</sup> On the contrary, they saw that I had been entrusted with the gospel to those who are uncircumcised, just as Peter had been entrusted with the gospel to those who are circumcised. <sup>8</sup> For God, who worked in Peter for the apostleship to those who are circumcised, also worked in me to the Gentiles. <sup>9</sup> When James, Cephas, and John, who had a reputation as pillars, recognized the grace that had been given to me, they gave the right hand of fellowship to Barnabas and me. They agreed that we should go to the Gentiles and they should go to the circumcised. <sup>10</sup> They requested only that we remember the poor, the very thing that I was eager to do.

<sup>11</sup> But when Cephas came to Antioch, I opposed him to his face because he stood condemned. <sup>12</sup> Before certain men came from James, Cephas was eating with the Gentiles. But when these men came, he stopped and kept away from the Gentiles. He was afraid of those who were demanding circumcision. <sup>13</sup> Also the rest of the Jews joined in this hypocrisy. Even Barnabas was led astray with them by their hypocrisy. <sup>14</sup> But when I saw that their behavior was not following the truth of the gospel, I said to Cephas in front of all of them, "If you are a Jew but are living like a Gentile and not like a Jew, how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?" <sup>15</sup> We ourselves are Jews by birth and not Gentile sinners; <sup>16</sup> yet we know that no person is justified by the works of the law but through faith in Christ Jesus. So we also have believed in Christ Jesus so that we might be justified by faith in Christ and not by the works of the law. For by the works of the law no flesh will be justified. <sup>17</sup> But if, while we seek to be justified in Christ, we too were found to be sinners, is Christ then a minister of sin? Absolutely not! <sup>18</sup> For if I rebuild those things I once destroyed, I prove myself to be a transgressor. <sup>19</sup> For through the law I died to the law, so that I might live for God. I have been crucified with Christ. <sup>[1]</sup><sup>20</sup> It is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me. The life I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me. <sup>21</sup> I do not set aside the grace of God, for if righteousness could be gained through the law, then Christ died for nothing!

---

### Footnotes

2:19 <sup>[1]</sup>Some translations include this sentence with verse 20.

---

## Galatians 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul continues to defend the true gospel. This began in [Galatians 1:11](#).

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Circumcised and uncircumcised

The law of Moses required Jewish males to be circumcised. The Jews called Gentiles "the uncircumcised."

## Slavery and freedom

Paul introduces these ideas in Galatians 2:4. He uses the metaphor of slavery for people who are obligated to obey the law of Moses. He uses the metaphor of freedom, or liberty, for people who are not obligated to obey the law of Moses because they trust in Jesus Christ to make them righteous.

## The false brothers

When Paul says that false brothers wanted to make the believers slaves, he is referring to Jews who claimed to be Christians and who wanted to convince Gentile Christians to obey the law of Moses.

## The hypocrisy of Cephas

Jews normally did not eat with Gentiles because Gentiles did not obey the law of Moses. Cephas knew that Gentile Christians are not obligated to obey the law of Moses, and because of this, he knew that it was permissible to eat with them. However, when some men came saying that Gentile Christians are obligated to obey the law, Cephas stopped eating with the Gentiles Christians, as if he, too, believed that they need to obey the law of Moses. Paul rebuked Cephas for treating the Gentile Christians like that.

## Galatians 2

### 2:1-5

#### Why did Paul go to Jerusalem after 14 years?

[21:1]

Paul traveled to Jerusalem because that is where James, Peter, and John lived. They were apostles and church leaders. Paul wanted them to know that he preached and taught the truth about Jesus.

Some scholars think this was 14 years after Paul believed in Jesus (see: Acts 9). Other scholars think it was after his first trip to Jerusalem (see: Acts 11.27-30). Other scholars think this time in Jerusalem when the church leaders met (see: Acts 15.2).

See: [Preach \(Preacher\)](#)

#### Who was Barnabas?

[2:1]

Barnabas, also called Joseph, was an apostle (see Acts 14:14) who traveled with Paul on several missionary trips. Barnabas was one of the first people to believe Paul was a Christian (see Acts 9:27). Sometime before he met Paul, Barnabas became a Christian. Some of the first Christians thought Barnabas was a prophet (see Acts 13:1).

His name means "son of comfort." Barnabas was born in the city of Salamis on the island of Cyprus (see Acts 4:36). Scholars are not sure when he was born. Most scholars believe some non-Christians killed Barnabas because he was a Christian.

See: Acts 4:36 See: [Prophet](#)

#### Who was Titus?

[2:1]

Titus went with Paul on several missionary journeys. He helped Paul in many ways. He carried letters and messages for Paul to some churches. Many scholars think Titus became the leader of the church in Crete. Paul wrote a letter to Titus. This is one of the books in the New Testament.

Titus was born in Antioch at the beginning of the first century. His father was a Greek, and his mother was Jewish. People were not sure if he was Jewish or Gentile. Because of this, Christians asked if he needed to be circumcised in the same way Jewish men were circumcised. Some scholars think that 2:4 indicates Paul made Titus get circumcised. Other scholars say Titus was never circumcised.

See: [Circumcise \(Circumcision\)](#); [Circumcise \(Circumcision\)](#)

See Map: Crete

### **What did Barnabas and Titus do for Paul?**

[2:1]

Barnabas and Titus went to Jerusalem with Paul because God told him to go there. Paul told the church leaders there about how he preached and taught the Gentiles. Some scholars believe that Barnabas and Titus also spoke in Jerusalem when the church leaders talked about Gentiles becoming Christians (see: Acts 15).

See: [Gentile](#); [Gentile](#)

### **Why did Paul worry about the Galatians?**

[2:2]

Paul worried that the Galatians no longer followed the gospel he preached to them. He worried that the Galatians followed false teachers who were also called "Judaizers." They did not think that believing in Jesus was enough to make a person a Christian. They thought people also needed to follow the Law of Moses to become a Christian. Paul taught they did not need to follow the Law of Moses. He taught that once they believed in Jesus, they had freedom because of Jesus. That is, they no longer needed to follow the Law of Moses.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### **Why did they want Titus circumcised?**

[2:3]

Some scholars think that some of the Jewish Christians wanted Paul to have Titus circumcised. They were not going to accept Titus as a church leader until he was circumcised. Titus had a Greek father and was not Jewish. Titus was a Christian. However, some Jewish Christian did not accept Titus. They wanted him to be circumcised and follow other Law of Moses before they accepted him.

Paul told the Jewish Christians that Gentile Christians did not need to be circumcised to be Christians or church leaders. Peter, who was the most important church leader, also knew this (see: Acts 10). Paul got the other church leaders to agree that Titus did not have to be circumcised.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

## **2:4-5**

### **What did Paul mean about "slaves" and "submission"?**

[2:4, 2:5]

Paul used language about "slaves" and "submission" because he knew that if a person believes in Jesus, that is enough for God to save them from their sins. This makes them a Christian. That is, they are no longer slaves to the Law of Moses because they are free in Christ. So, after he believed in Jesus, he knew that only Jesus saved him from his sins and following the Law of Moses did not. Paul wanted other Christians to understand that the gospel is true. He wanted them to know that being circumcised did not make them Christians. Only believing in Jesus made them Christians. Paul wanted his readers not to listen to anyone who said they were not Christian because they were not Jewish.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Gospel](#); [Circumcise \(Circumcision\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

**2:6-10****Does God want both Jews and Gentiles to be saved?**

[2:7]

Paul wanted his readers to know that God wanted both Jews and Gentiles to become Christians. He knew that someone needed to preach the gospel to the Gentiles in the same way as they preached it to the Jews. Paul wrote that God "entrusted" him to be an apostle to the Gentiles in the same way God entrusted Peter to be an apostle to the Jews. God chose both of them to serve in this special way.

When Paul wrote about the "uncircumcised", he spoke about the Gentiles. When Paul wrote "circumcised", he spoke about the Jews.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Apostle](#); [Gentile](#); [Circumcise \(Circumcision\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

**Who were James, Cephas, and John?**

[2:9]

James, Cephas (that is the apostle Peter), and John were apostles and leaders of the first Christians (see: Acts 15). Paul used a metaphor of pillars holding up a building to tell others that in the same way a building is held up by pillars, so these men were important in holding up the church during the time of the apostles. That is, they served the church greatly. Paul wanted people to know that these leaders helped him to preach the gospel in the right way.

Scholars do not know which man named James Paul wrote about. Some think he was the half-brother of Jesus (they had the same mother but not the same father). Other scholars think this was James, the son of Zebedee. He was one of the 12 original apostles of Jesus. Whoever he was, the James Paul talked about was the leader of the first Christians in Jerusalem. He may have written the book of James in the New Testament.

Jesus called Peter to become Jesus' disciple (see Matthew 4:18-22). Peter was also called Cephas. Cephas was with Jesus while Jesus taught people on earth. After Jesus was killed and rose from the dead, Peter preached and taught both Jewish and Gentile people to believe in Jesus. He wrote two books that are in the New Testament (1 Peter and 2 Peter).

John was the disciple whom Jesus called away from working as a fisherman along with his older brother, James (see Matthew 4:21-22). He was called the "beloved disciple" (see: John 13:23). He wrote five books in the New Testament (the Gospel of John, 1 John, 2 John, 3 John, and Revelation). He was one of the leaders of the first Christians.

See: [Disciple](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Apostle](#); [Disciple](#)

**What was the "right hand of fellowship."**

[2:9]

When Paul was alive, men shook hands or grabbed arms to welcome each other. They did this to show that they honored each other and agreed about important things. Paul used this as a metaphor for friendship. He wanted to say that the leaders of the Christians in Jerusalem thought of him and Barnabas to be friends.

See: [Metaphor](#)

**Why was Paul to help poor people?**

[2:10]

The leaders wanted Paul to help the poor people in order to show that he was following God correctly. Christians have always helped poor people because this honors God. The Bible tells people who believe in God to take care of poor people (see: Deuteronomy 15:7-8, 10-11; Psalm 41:1; Matthew 19:21; Romans 15:26; 2 Corinthians 8; James 2:2-4). In the Middle East, sometimes the crops were bad, or the rains did

not come. Sometimes, men were not able to provide food for their families. Because of these difficult times, there were many poor people.

## 2:11-21

### Why did Paul confront Peter?

[2:11]

In these verses, Paul wrote that he had to confront Cephas, who was also called Peter, about not eating with the Gentiles. After the meeting in Jerusalem, Paul returned to Antioch in Syria. Later, Peter also came to Antioch. While he was in Antioch, Peter stopped eating and being friends with Gentile Christians. He also started following the Law of Moses again. He did this because he was afraid of what the Jewish Christians thought about him.

Paul knew that this was wrong, so he confronted Peter about it. Paul wanted Peter and other Christians to know that they did not need to follow the Law of Moses anymore. Christians needed to know that following rules, regulations, or rituals did not save them from their sins. Paul also knew that Jesus did not think Jewish Christians were better than Gentile Christians. So he talked to Peter about this.

Paul also confronted Peter because Peter was not doing the things that he preached. When someone does not do what they say other people are to do, this is called "hypocrisy" (see 2:13). Paul told Peter that Peter was being a hypocrite. He wanted readers to know that they are not to be hypocrites.

Paul also wanted readers to know that he was equal to the other Christian leaders. He did this by describing how he was able to tell other leaders what they were to do.

See: [Hypocrisy \(Hypocrite\)](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Hypocrisy \(Hypocrite\)](#)

See Map: Antioch and Syria

### How are Christians justified?

[2:16]

Paul wrote mainly to the Jewish Christians to tell them that they are "justified" by believing in Jesus. That is, they now are friends with God and can live together with God in heaven forever. This is because God considers them to have done the right things, even though they have done the wrong things. This is called being "justified." Nothing else can justify them. Following the Law of Moses did not justify them. He wanted Jewish Christians and also other Christians to understand that believing in Jesus is the most important thing for them to do.

Paul wrote more about justification in chapters 3-6.

See: [Justify \(Justification\)](#)

### What did Paul ask about what Jesus taught?

[2:17]

Paul asked the Jewish Christians in Galatia about what Jesus taught and what he wanted his followers to do and not do (see 5:19-22). This is because some of them believed it was a sin to eat or be friends with Gentiles. That is, they believed that Jews were not to eat or be friends with Gentiles. To them, if the Gentiles were not circumcised, they were not friends with God. And they were not to be friends with them. Paul wanted to say that having Jews and Gentiles eat together or be friends was not a sin because Jesus made them same as Christians. They did not become friends of God by obeying the Law of Moses. Paul also wanted to say that Jewish Christians were not to go back to thinking the law was going to save them.

When Paul asked the Galatian Christians what Jesus taught, he wanted them to think about how Jesus did not want them to sin. Paul did not teach that Jesus wanted people to sin. He knew his readers knew this. So he asked this question to force his readers to think about what they knew Jesus taught. He asked them about what Jesus taught and what he wanted his followers to do and not do (see 5:19-22). He knew his readers would answer his question by rejecting the idea that Jesus told people to sin. He wanted them to

know it was not a sin for Jewish Christians and Gentile Christians to be friends. It also meant that Gentile Christians were not to think that they had to follow the Law of Moses.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### Why did Paul compare following the law to death?

[2:20, 2:21]

Paul used the metaphor of life and death to say that trying to keep the Law of Moses, in order to get to heaven and live together with God, only ended in death and going to hell. Paul wrote that when he tried to keep the Law of Moses, it was like he was killing himself. He did not please God and God did not forgive his sins.

Paul wrote that nobody is saved from their sins because they follow rules or laws. Paul said that no one, not even Paul himself, was able to keep the whole Law of Moses. People cannot be saved from their sins by following rules.

When Paul believed in Jesus, Jesus gave him a new life. Out of love, God forgave Paul's sins. This was because Jesus died and rose from the dead.

Paul wrote that there is no other way to be friends with God. If there was, then Jesus did not have to die for God to forgive people's sins.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Hell](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

## Galatians 01

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to give the history of how he learned the gospel from God, not the apostles.

### went up

"traveled." Jerusalem is located in hilly country. The Jews also viewed Jerusalem as the place on earth that is closest to heaven, so Paul may have been speaking figuratively, or it may be that it was reflecting the difficult, uphill, journey to get to Jerusalem.

## Galatians 02

### those who seemed to be important

"the most important leaders among the believers"

### I was not running—or had not run—in vain

Paul uses running as a metaphor for work. Alternate translation: "I was doing, or had done, profitable work"

### in vain

"for no benefit" or "for nothing"

## Galatians 03

### to be circumcised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to have someone circumcise him"

## Galatians 04

### The false brothers came in secretly

"People who pretended to be Christians came into the church," or "People who pretended to be Christians came among us"

### spy on the liberty

secretly watch people to see how they live in liberty

### liberty

freedom

### They desired

"These spies desired" or "These false brothers wanted"

### to enslave us

"to make us slaves to the law." Paul is speaking about being forced to follow the Jewish rituals that the law commanded. He is speaking about this as if it were slavery. The most important ritual was circumcision. Alternate translation: "to force us to obey the law"

## Galatians 05

### yield in submission

"submit" or "listen"

## Galatians 06

### added nothing to me

The word "me" here represents what Paul was teaching. Alternate translation: "added nothing to

what I teach" or "did not tell me to add anything to what I teach"

## Galatians 07

**On the contrary**  
"Instead" or "Rather"

**I had been entrusted ... Peter had been entrusted**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God trusted me ... God trusted Peter"

**had been entrusted with the gospel to those**  
"had been given the responsibility of preaching the gospel to those"

## Galatians 08

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Galatians 09

**who had a reputation as pillars**  
A pillar is a post that supports a building. This is a metaphor meaning important leaders. Alternate translation: "who were known to be important leaders" or "who were known to be important leaders of the church"

**recognized the grace that had been given to me**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "recognized the grace that God had given to me"

**the grace that had been given to me**  
The abstract noun "grace" can be translated with the phrase "be kind." Alternate translation: "that God had been kind to me"

**gave ... the right hand of fellowship**  
Grasping and shaking the right hand was a symbol of fellowship. Alternate translation: "welcomed ... as fellow workers" or "welcomed ... with honor"

## Galatians 10

**remember the poor**  
You may need to make explicit what about the poor he was to remember. Alternate translation: "remember to take care of the needs of the poor"

## Galatians 11

**I opposed him to his face**  
The words "to his face" are a metonym for "where he could see and hear me." Alternate translation: "I confronted him in person" or "I challenged his actions in person"

## Galatians 12

**Before**  
in relation to time

**he stopped**  
"he stopped eating with them"

**He was afraid of those who were demanding circumcision**  
The reason Cephas was afraid can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "He was afraid that these men who required circumcision would judge that he was doing something wrong" or "He was afraid that these men who required circumcision would blame him for doing something wrong"

**those who were demanding circumcision**  
Jews who had become Christians, but who demanded that those who believe in Christ live according to Jewish customs

**kept away from**  
"stayed away from" or "avoided"

## Galatians 13

**this hypocrisy**  
Paul calls Peter's staying away from the Gentiles "this hypocrisy" because Peter was pretending to be like those Jews who say that Gentile Christians have to be circumcised.

**Even Barnabas was led astray with them by their hypocrisy**  
Here to be "led astray" is a metaphor for being persuaded to do something wrong. Alternate translation: "Even Barnabas was persuaded to be a hypocrite because of them"

## Galatians 14

**their behavior was not following the truth of the gospel**  
"they were not living according to the truth of the gospel"

**how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?**  
This rhetorical question is a rebuke and can be translated as a statement. The word "you" is singular and refers to Peter. Alternate translation: "you are wrong to force the Gentiles to live like Jews."

**force**  
Possible meanings are 1) force by using words or 2) persuade.

## Galatians 15

**Connecting Statement:**  
Paul tells the believers that Jews who know the law, as well as Gentiles who do not know the law, are

saved only by faith in Christ and not by keeping the law.

**not Gentile sinners**

"not those whom the Jews call Gentile sinners"

**Galatians 16**

**we**

This probably refers to Paul and others but not to the Galatians, who were primarily Gentiles.

**no flesh**

The word "flesh" is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "no person"

**Galatians 17**

**while we seek to be justified in Christ**

The phrase "justified in Christ" means justified because we are united with Christ and justified by means of Christ.

**we too were found to be sinners**

The words "were found to be" are an idiom that emphasizes that "we are" certainly sinners. Alternate translation: "we see that we also certainly are sinners"

**Absolutely not!**

"Of course, that is not true!" This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question "Does Christ become a servant of sin?" You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here.

**Galatians 18**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 19**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 20**

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

**Galatians 21**

**I do not set aside the grace of God**

"I do not reject the grace of God" or "I do not consider God's grace to be worthless"

**the grace of God**

Paul is speaking of God's kindness to us. Christ died for us so that we can be justified.

**if righteousness could be gained through the law, then Christ died for nothing**

Paul uses this statement to argue that righteousness cannot be gained through the law. If it could be then there was no need for Christ to die to give us righteousness, because we could gain it ourselves by obeying the law.

**if righteousness could be gained through the law**

"if people could become righteous by obeying the law"

**then Christ died for nothing**

"then Christ would have accomplished nothing by dying"

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Galatians 2:1**

**What did Paul do when he went up to Jerusalem after fourteen years?**

Paul spoke privately to the leaders of the church, explaining to them the gospel that he was proclaiming.

**Galatians 2:3**

**What was Titus, a Gentile, not required to do?**

Titus was not required to be circumcised.

**Galatians 2:4**

**What did the false brothers desire to do?**

The false brothers desired to make Paul and his companions slaves to the law.

**Galatians 2:6**

**Did the leaders of the church in Jerusalem change Paul's message?**

No, they contributed nothing to Paul's message.

**Galatians 2:7**

**To whom was Paul primarily sent to proclaim the gospel?**

Paul was primarily sent to the uncircumcised to proclaim the gospel.

**To whom was Peter primarily sent to proclaim the gospel?**

Peter was primarily sent to the circumcised to proclaim the gospel.



**Galatians 2:8**

**To whom was Paul primarily sent to proclaim the gospel?**  
Paul was primarily sent to the uncircumcised to proclaim the gospel.

**To whom was Peter primarily sent to proclaim the gospel?**  
Peter was primarily sent to the circumcised to proclaim the gospel.

**Galatians 2:9**

**How did the leaders in Jerusalem show their approval of Paul's ministry?**  
The leaders in Jerusalem gave Paul and Barnabus the right hand of fellowship to show their approval.

**Galatians 2:11**

**What error did Peter make when he came to Antioch?**  
Peter stopped eating with the Gentiles because he feared the men who had been circumcised.

**Galatians 2:12**

**What error did Peter make when he came to Antioch?**  
Peter stopped eating with the Gentiles because he feared the men who had been circumcised.

**Galatians 2:14**

**What did Paul ask Cephas in front of everyone?**  
Paul asked Cephas how he could force Gentiles to live like Jews when Cephas was living like a Gentile.

**Galatians 2:16**

**Paul said that no one is justified by what?**  
Paul said that no one is justified by the works of the law.

**How is a person justified before God?**  
A person is justified before God by faith in Christ Jesus.

**Galatians 2:18**

**If someone returns to trying to follow the law after having faith in Christ, what does Paul say he has actually become?**  
Paul says he shows himself actually to be a law breaker.

**Galatians 2:20**

**Who did Paul say now lived in him?**  
Paul said that Christ now lived in him.

**What does Paul say the Son of God did for him?**  
Paul says the Son of God loved him and gave himself for Paul.

## Chapter 3

<sup>1</sup> Foolish Galatians! Who has put a spell on you? It was before your eyes that Jesus Christ was publicly displayed as crucified. <sup>2</sup> This is the only thing I want to learn from you: Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith? <sup>3</sup> Are you so foolish? Having begun by the Spirit, are you now going to be perfected by the flesh? <sup>4</sup> Have you suffered so many things for nothing—if indeed it was for nothing? <sup>5</sup> Does he who gives the Spirit to you and works miracles among you do so by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith? <sup>6</sup> Just as Abraham "believed God and it was credited to him as righteousness," <sup>7</sup> in the same way, understand, then, that those of faith are the children of Abraham. <sup>8</sup> The scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, preached the gospel beforehand to Abraham, saying, "In you all the nations will be blessed." <sup>9</sup> So then, those of faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith. <sup>10</sup> All who rely on the works of the law are under a curse; and so it is written, "Cursed is everyone who does not abide by all the things written in the book of the law, and do them." <sup>11</sup> Now it is clear that no one is justified before God by the law, because "the righteous will live by faith." <sup>12</sup> But the law is not of faith, rather, "The person who does the works of the law must live by them." <sup>13</sup> Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us—for it is written, "Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree"— <sup>14</sup> so that the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles in Christ Jesus, so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit.

<sup>15</sup> Brothers, let me speak in human terms. Once a man-made contract is established by law, no one can set it aside or add to it. <sup>16</sup> Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his descendant. It does not say, "to descendants," referring to many, but instead to only one, "and to your descendant," who is Christ. <sup>17</sup> Now what I am saying is this: The law, which came 430 years afterward, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God, to nullify the promise. <sup>18</sup> For if the inheritance comes by the law, then it no longer comes by promise. But God freely gave it to Abraham by a promise. <sup>19</sup> What, then, was the purpose of the law? It was added because of transgressions until the descendant of Abraham would come to whom the promise had been made. The law was ordained through angels by the hand of an intermediary. <sup>20</sup> Now an intermediary implies more than one person. But God is one. <sup>21</sup> So is the law against the promises of God? Absolutely not! For if a law had been given that could give life, then righteousness would certainly have come by the law. <sup>22</sup> But the scripture imprisoned everything under sin so that the promise by faith in Jesus Christ might be given to those who believe.

<sup>23</sup> Now before faith came, we were held captive under the law, imprisoned until faith should be revealed. <sup>24</sup> So then the law became our guardian until Christ came, so that we might be justified by faith. <sup>25</sup> But now that faith has come, we are no longer under a guardian. <sup>26</sup> For you are all sons of God through faith in Christ Jesus. <sup>27</sup> For as many of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ. <sup>28</sup> There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus. <sup>29</sup> Then if you are Christ's, you are Abraham's descendants, and heirs according to promise.

## Galatians 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Equality in Christ

All Christians are equally united to Christ. Ancestry, gender, and status do not matter. All are equal with each other. All are equal in the eyes of God.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses many different rhetorical questions in this chapter. He uses them to convince the Galatians of their sin. (See: and sin)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that the physical part of man is sinful. "Flesh" is used in this chapter to contrast with that which is spiritual. (See: flesh)

### "Those of faith are children of Abraham"

Scholars are divided on what this means. Some believe Christians inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham, so Christians replace the physical descendants of Israel. Others believe Christians spiritually follow Abraham, but they do not inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham. In light of Paul's other teachings and the context here, Paul is probably writing about the Jewish and Gentile Christians sharing the same faith as Abraham did.

---

## Galatians 3

### 3:1-14

#### Why was Paul upset with the Galatians?

[3:1, 3:2]

Paul was upset with the Galatians because they forgot how God saved them from their sins. He told them that they became Christians by believing in Jesus. This is how the Holy Spirit came to live in them. They did not have to be circumcised and keep the Law of Moses for God to save them from their sins.

Paul wanted to know that the Galatians knew that they did not depend on keeping the law for God to save them. He wanted them to know that if they try to keep the Jewish Law, they will fail (see: Deuteronomy 27:26). They needed to believe in Jesus and trusting God to be saved from their sins.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Circumcise \(Circumcision\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

#### Why did Paul write about Abraham?

[3:6]

Paul wrote about Abraham because wanted his readers to think about how Abraham completely trusted in God (see: Genesis 15:6). In the same way Abraham completely trusted in God, the Galatian Christians needed to completely trust in God. The Galatians knew the story of Abraham. They knew that Abraham's circumcision came after he believed in God's promises. Paul told the Galatians that Abraham believed in God before God did anything he promised to give Abraham. Also, Abraham lived before God gave the law to the Jewish people. God did not give promises to Abraham or care for Abraham because Abraham followed the law. In the same way, following the law did not cause God to care for the Galatians either.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

#### Why did Paul say that anyone hung on a tree was cursed?

[3:13]

In 3:13, Paul quoted Deuteronomy 21:23 because wanted them to know that Jesus was crucified on a tree so that he could be cursed for people's sins. People sometimes called the cross a "tree" because of it was made from a cut down tree.

Paul wanted his readers to know that Jesus did all that is needed for God to forgive their sins if they believe in him (see: Isaiah 52:13-53:12). When people sin, they deserve a curse. But when Jesus died on the cross, he took that curse for all people. Anyone who believes in Jesus will have this curse taken from them.

See: [Cross](#); [Curse](#); [Cross](#)

### 3:15-24

#### Who are the "descendants" of Abraham?

[3:16]

Paul wanted the Galatians to know that if they believed in Jesus, they were descendants of Abraham. That is, they did the same types of things Abraham did. In Genesis 18:16-18, God told Abraham that he was going to give him a son, a "descendant." God fulfilled this promise by giving Abraham Isaac as a son. God gave Isaac to Abraham and Sarah because they trusted God. God also promised that the Messiah, that is Jesus, was going to be a descendant of Abraham. In the same way Isaac was a physical descendant of Abraham, Jesus is a physical descendant of Abraham. Paul also called Jesus a spiritual descendant of Abraham. That is, anyone who believes and trust in Jesus will also be a spiritual descendant of Abraham. That is, they do the same things Abraham did in the same way a son should do the same good things his father does. Both Abraham and Jesus showed people why they need to believe and trust God.

#### How are Christians to believe in God the same way Abraham did?

[3:18]

In the same way Abraham completely believed and trusted in God, so are Christians to believe and trust in God. In 3:26 Paul said that God saves people from their sins only because they believe in Jesus. Abraham also trusted in God to save him from his sins. So, Paul used the metaphor of saying that Christians are Abraham's descendants because they trust God the in the same way Abraham trusted God.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

#### What was the purpose of the law?

[3:19]

Paul wrote that the Law of Moses had two purposes. He used metaphors to talk about these two purposes.

Paul said that the law told the Jews how they were not honoring God. That is, it showed them they were sinners. The law told Jews how they were to honor God. But obeying the law perfectly was not possible. That is why Paul said the law showed them they were prisoners. In 3:19-22, Paul wrote that people were prisoners to the law. He does not mean prisoners of other people or of a government. That is, because they tried to keep the law to honor God, but were unable to, they will never be freed from the punishment that comes from not following the law perfectly. In 3:23-25, Paul wrote that the law was a tutor or guardian. That is, in the same way someone teaches and cares for children, so did the law for the Jewish people. Paul wanted readers to think about how children need to be taken care of and taught until they are adults. He wanted to say that God gave the law to people to teach them that they needed to trust in God completely. But, when God sent Jesus to earth, people did not need the law anymore to make them righteous. They only need to believe in Jesus for God to say that they are righteous and to give them peace. When this happens, God adopts them into his family (see: 3:25; Romans 9:4).

See: [Adopt \(Adoption\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Adopt \(Adoption\)](#)

### 3:25-29

#### How did Paul want the Galatians to think about themselves?

[3:28]

In 3:28, Paul told Christians to think of each other as equal to each other. Paul wanted all Christians to know that they are equal because they believe in Christ. It did not matter whether the Galatians were Gentile or Jewish. If they believed in Jesus, God thought of them equally.

#### Why did Paul call Christians "heirs according to promise"?

[3:29]

Paul called the Galatians "heirs according to promise" in 3:29, because, just like children inherit their parents' things when they die, Christians will inherit the kingdom of God because of Jesus' death and resurrection. Romans gave and received an inheritance from family members. It was a gift. In 3:25-29, Paul wrote about some of the many gifts they received from God. These gifts were inherited because they were now part of God's family. Paul talks about several of these gifts: They no longer needed the law as a "guardian" the way Paul had written about in 3:23-24. God adopted them into his family because they believed in Jesus. They were "baptized into Christ." Paul wanted Christians to know that Jesus joined Christians to himself. Christians are also joined to each other because they all believe in Jesus. Paul used words about a person putting on clothing as a metaphor for this.

Advice to translators: an inheritance is when a parent or other family member dies and leaves their possessions to another person, usually their children.

See: [Metaphor](#), [Kingdom of God](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Adopt \(Adoption\)](#); [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#); [Metaphor](#)

---

## Galatians 01

### General Information:

Paul is rebuking the Galatians by asking rhetorical questions.

### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers in Galatia that God gave them his Spirit when they believed the gospel, not because they obeyed his law.

### Who has put a spell on you?

Paul is using irony and a rhetorical question to say that the Galatians are acting as though someone has put a spell on them. He does not really believe that someone has put a spell on them. Alternate translation: "You behave as if someone has put a spell on you!"

### put a spell on you

"done magic on you" or "done witchcraft on you"

### It was before your eyes that Jesus Christ was publicly displayed as crucified

Paul speaks of his clear teaching of Jesus being crucified as if he had put on public display a picture of Jesus being crucified. And he speaks of the Galatians having heard his teaching as if they had seen the picture. Alternate translation: "You yourselves heard the clear teaching about Jesus being crucified"

## Galatians 02

### This is the only thing I want to learn from you

This continues the irony from verse 1. Paul knows the answers to the rhetorical questions he is about to ask.

### Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith?

Translate this rhetorical question as a question if you can, because the reader will be expecting a question here. Also, be sure that the reader knows that the answer to the question is "by the hearing of faith," not "by doing what the law says." Alternate translation: "You received the Spirit, not by doing what the law says, but by the hearing of faith."

### the hearing of faith

"believing what you heard"

## Galatians 03

### Are you so foolish?

This rhetorical question shows that Paul is surprised and even angry that the Galatians are foolish. Alternate translation: "You are very foolish!"

### by the flesh

The word "flesh" is a metonym for effort. Alternate translation: "by your own effort" or "by your own work"

## Galatians 04

### Have you suffered so many things for nothing—if indeed it was for nothing?

Paul uses this question to rebuke the Galatians for behaving as though their faith in Christ and their suffering for it were for nothing. Alternate translation: "You have suffered so many things: Do not let it be for nothing!" or "You suffered so many things from those who opposed your faith in Christ. If you now think that righteousness comes by obeying the law, then your suffering was for nothing!"

### Have you suffered so many things

The Galatians had believed that God makes people righteous because they trust in Jesus Christ, not because they obey the law. Because of this, they suffered many things from those who opposed their faith in Christ.

### for nothing

"uselessly" or "without benefit to you"

## Galatians 05

### Does he ... do so by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith?

Paul asks another rhetorical question to remind the Galatians how people receive the Spirit. Alternate translation: "He ... does not do it by the works of the law; he does it by hearing with faith."

**by the works of the law**

This represents people doing the works that the law requires. Alternate translation: "because you do what the law tells us to do"

**by the hearing of faith**

Your language may require that what the people heard and whom they trusted be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "because you heard the message and had faith in Jesus" or "because you listened to the message and trusted in Jesus"

**Galatians 06****Connecting Statement:**

Paul reminds the Galatian believers that even Abraham received righteousness by faith and not by the law.

**it was credited to him as righteousness**

God saw Abraham's faith in God, so then God considered Abraham righteous.

**Galatians 07****those of faith**

"those who have faith." The meaning of the noun "faith" can be expressed with the verb "believe." Alternate translation: "those who believe"

**the children of Abraham**

This represents people whom God views as he viewed Abraham. Alternate translation: "righteous in the same way that Abraham was righteous"

**Galatians 08****The scripture, foreseeing ... faith, preached the gospel**

Because God's promise to Abraham was written in the scripture before Christ fulfilled the promise, the scripture is like someone who knows the future before it happens and who preaches the gospel. Alternate translation: "In the scripture, God showed before it happened ... faith, and he presented the gospel"

**In you**

The word "you" refers to Abraham. Ultimately God would bless the nations through one of Abraham's descendants. Alternate translation: "Because of you" or "Through you"

**all the nations**

"all the people-groups in the world." God was showing that his plan of salvation was not only for the Jewish people, but for both Jews and non-Jews.

**Galatians 09****the man of faith**

Possible meanings are 1) Abraham was the man who believed and trusted in God or 2) Abraham was faithful to God.

**Galatians 10****All who rely on ... the law are under a curse**

Being under a curse represents being cursed. Here it refers to being eternally punished. "Those who rely on ... the law are cursed" or "God will eternally punish those who rely on ... the law"

**the works of the law**

"what the law says we must do"

**Galatians 11****Now it is clear**

What is clear can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "The scriptures are clear" or "The scriptures teach clearly"

**no one is justified before God by the law**

This can be stated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God justifies no one by the law"

**no one is justified before God by the law**

Paul is correcting their belief that if they obeyed the law, God would justify them. Alternate translation: "no one is justified before God by obeying the law" or "God does not justify anyone for their obedience to the law"

**the righteous will live by faith**

The nominal adjective "righteous" refers to righteous people. Alternate translation: "righteous people will live by faith"

**Galatians 12****must live by them**

Possible meanings are 1) "must obey them all" or 2) "will be judged by his ability to do what the law demands."

**Galatians 13****Connecting Statement:**

Paul reminds these believers again that keeping the law could not save a person and that the law did not add a new condition to the promise by faith given to Abraham.

**from the curse of the law**

The noun "curse" can be expressed with the verb "curse." Alternate translation: "from being cursed because of the law" or "from being cursed for not obeying the law"

**from the curse of the law ... becoming a curse for us ... Cursed is everyone**

The word "curse" here is a metonym for God condemning the person whom he has cursed. Alternate translation: "from us having God condemn us because we broke the law ... having God condemn him instead of us ... God condemns everyone"

**hangs on a tree**

Paul expected his audience to understand that he was referring to Jesus hanging on the cross.

## Galatians 14

**so that the blessing of Abraham might come**

"and because Christ became a curse for us, the blessing of Abraham will come"

**so that by faith we might receive**

Possible meanings are 1) this is because Christ became a curse for us. Alternate translation: "and because Christ became a curse for us, we will receive by faith" or 2) this is because the blessing in Abraham came in Christ Jesus. Alternate translation: "and because the blessing in Abraham came in Christ Jesus, we will receive by faith"

**we might receive the promise**

The word "we" includes the people who would read the letter and so is inclusive.

## Galatians 15

**Brothers**

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

**in human terms**

"as a person" or "of things most people understand"

## Galatians 16

**Now**

This word shows that Paul has stated a general principle and is now beginning to introduce a specific case.

**referring to many**

"referring to many descendants"

**to your descendant**

The word "your" is singular and refers to a specific person, who is a particular descendant of Abraham

## Galatians 17

**The law, which came 430 years afterward, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God**

In some languages it might be strange to speak of a law coming or setting aside a covenant. It might be clearer to make explicit who gave the law. Alternate translation: "When God gave the law 430 years

later, he did not set aside the covenant that he had previously established"

**set aside**

"cancel"

**430 years**

"four hundred and thirty years"

**God, to nullify the promise**

"God; that is, it does not nullify the promise"

**nullify the promise**

"to make the promise worthless" or "to make things as if the promise had never been made"

## Galatians 18

**For if the inheritance comes by the law, then it no longer comes by promise**

Paul uses this argument to show that the inheritance does not come by obeying the law but by believing God's promise. Alternate translation: "If people could receive the inheritance by obeying the law, then it would no longer be true that people receive the inheritance by believing God's promise"

**the inheritance**

Paul speaks of what God has promised to give to believers as if it were an inheritance of property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "the gift"

## Galatians 19

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul tells the believers in Galatia why God gave the law.

**What, then, was the purpose of the law?**

Paul uses a rhetorical question to introduce the next topic he wants to discuss. It can also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what the purpose of the law is." or "Let me tell you why God gave the law."

**It was added**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God added it" or "God added the law"

**The law was ordained through angels**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God ordained the law through angels" or "God gave the law through angels"

**by the hand of an intermediary**

The words "by the hand of" are a metonym for the intermediary himself. An intermediary represents one person to another. Paul was probably talking about Moses, who represented God to the people of Israel. Alternate translation "by an intermediary" or "by his representative, Moses"

## Galatians 20

### Now an intermediary implies more than one person

An intermediary represents one person to another. Alternate translation: "Now if we say that there was an intermediary, that means that there must have been more than one person."

**intermediary**  
representative

### But God is one

Paul uses this statement to contrast the law and the promise. Paul seems to be saying that the promise is superior to the law since God used an intermediary to give the law, but he did not use an intermediary when he made the promise. "God is one" is an important statement from the Old Testament, so it would be best to translate it as Paul wrote it. If this does not make sense in your language, you could translate it as "God is one God."

## Galatians 21

### against the promises

"opposed to the promises" or "in conflict with the promises"

### if a law had been given that could give life

This can be stated in active form, and the abstract noun "life" can be translated with the verb "live." Alternate translation: "if God had given a law that enabled those who kept it to live"

### righteousness would certainly have come by the law

"we could have become righteous by obeying that law"

## Galatians 22

### the scripture imprisoned everything under sin

The idea of being imprisoned under sin represents being controlled by sin. Possible meanings are 1) "the scripture caused everyone to be controlled by sin" or 2) "the scripture says that everyone is controlled by sin."

### the promise by faith in Jesus Christ

The word "promise" represents what God promised. Alternate translation: "what God promised to those who have faith in Christ"

## Galatians 23

### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds those in Galatia that believers are free in God's family, not slaves under the law.

### we were held captive under the law, imprisoned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the law held us captive and we were in prison" or "the law held us captive in prison"

### we were held captive under the law, imprisoned

The way the law controlled us is spoken of as if the law were a prison guard holding us as captives. Alternate translation: "the law controlled us like a prison guard"

### until faith should be revealed

This can be stated in active form, and who this faith is in can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "until God would reveal that he justifies those who have faith in Christ" or "until God would reveal that he justifies those who trust in Christ"

## Galatians 24

### guardian

More than simply "one who gives oversight to a child," this was usually a slave who was responsible for enforcing rules and behaviors given by the parent and would report to the parent on the child's actions.

### until Christ came

"until the time when Christ came"

### so that we might be justified

Before Christ came, God had planned to justify us. When Christ came, he carried out his plan to justify us. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that God would declare us to be righteous"

## Galatians 25

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Galatians 26

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Galatians 27

### For as many of you who were baptized into Christ

"For all of you who were baptized into Christ"

### have clothed yourselves with Christ

Possible meanings are 1) this is a metaphor meaning that they have been united to Christ. Alternate translation: "have become united with Christ" or "belong to Christ" or 2) this is a metaphor meaning that they have become like Christ. Alternate translation: "have become like Christ"



## Galatians 28

**There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female**  
"God sees no difference between Jew and Greek, slave and free, male and female"

## Galatians 29

**heirs**  
The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

---

## ULB Translation Questions

### Galatians 3:6

**How was Abraham considered righteous before God?**  
Abraham believed God and it was credited to him as righteousness.

### Galatians 3:7

**Who are the sons of Abraham?**  
Those who believe God are the sons of Abraham.

### Galatians 3:8

**The scripture foresaw that the Gentiles would be justified in what way?**  
The scripture foresaw that the Gentiles would be justified by faith.

### Galatians 3:10

**Those who rely on the works of the law to be justified are under what?**  
Those who rely on the works of the law to be justified are under a curse.

### Galatians 3:11

**How many people have been justified by God through the works of the law?**  
No one has been justified through the works of the law.

### Galatians 3:14

**Why did Christ redeem us by becoming a curse for us?**  
Christ redeemed us by becoming a curse for us so that the blessing upon Abraham might come to the Gentiles.

### Galatians 3:16

**Who was the "descendant" that was spoken of in the promise to Abraham?**  
The "descendant" spoken of in the promise to Abraham was Christ.

### Galatians 3:17

**Did the coming of the Jewish law 430 years after Abraham void the promise God made to Abraham?**  
No, the law did not void the promise made to Abraham.

### Galatians 3:19

**Why then was there the law?**  
The law came because of transgressions until Abraham's descendant came.

### Galatians 3:22

**What did the law in scripture imprison everyone under?**  
The law in scripture imprisoned everyone under sin.

### Galatians 3:23

**How are we released from the imprisonment of the law?**  
We are released from the imprisonment of the law by faith in Christ Jesus.

### Galatians 3:24

**How are we released from the imprisonment of the law?**  
We are released from the imprisonment of the law by faith in Christ Jesus.

### Galatians 3:25

**How are we released from the imprisonment of the law?**  
We are released from the imprisonment of the law by faith in Christ Jesus.

### Galatians 3:26

**How are we released from the imprisonment of the law?**  
We are released from the imprisonment of the law by faith in Christ Jesus.

### Galatians 3:27

**Who has been clothed in Christ?**  
All who have been baptized into Christ have been clothed in Christ.

**Galatians 3:28**

**What different kinds of persons are made one in Christ Jesus?**

Jews, Greeks, slaves, free, male, and female are all made one in Christ Jesus.

---

## Chapter 4

<sup>1</sup> I am saying that the heir, for whatever time he is a child, is no different from a slave, though he is owner of the entire estate. <sup>2</sup> But he is under guardians and managers until the date set by his father. <sup>3</sup> So also, when we were children, we were enslaved to the elemental principles of the world. <sup>4</sup> But when the fullness of time had come, God sent out his Son, born of a woman, born under the law <sup>5</sup> so that he might redeem those under the law, so that we might receive adoption as sons. <sup>6</sup> And because you are sons, God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, who cries out, "Abba, Father." <sup>7</sup> So you are no longer a slave, but a son, and if a son, then you are also an heir through God.

<sup>8</sup> But at that time, when you did not know God, you were made to be slaves to those who are, by their natural powers, not gods at all. <sup>9</sup> But now that you have come to know God, or rather that you are known by God, how is it that you are turning back to the weak and worthless elemental principles? Do you want to be enslaved all over again? <sup>10</sup> You observe days and new moons and seasons and years! <sup>11</sup> I am afraid for you that somehow my labor with you may have been for nothing.

<sup>12</sup> I beg you, brothers, become like me, for I also have become like you. You did me no wrong. <sup>13</sup> But you know that it was because of a disease of the flesh that I proclaimed the gospel to you the first time, <sup>14</sup> and though my physical condition put you to the test, you did not despise or reject me. Instead you welcomed me as if I were an angel of God, as if I were Christ Jesus himself. <sup>15</sup> Where then is your blessing now? For I testify to you that, if it were possible, you would have torn out your own eyes and given them to me. <sup>16</sup> So then, have I become your enemy because I am telling you the truth? <sup>17</sup> They are zealous to win you over, but for no good purpose. They want to shut you out so you may be zealous for them. <sup>18</sup> It is always good to be zealous for a good purpose, and not only when I am present with you. <sup>19</sup> My little children, again I am suffering the pains of childbirth for you until Christ is formed in you. <sup>20</sup> I wish I could be present with you now and change my tone, because I am perplexed about you.

<sup>21</sup> Tell me, you who desire to be under the law, do you not listen to the law? <sup>22</sup> For it is written that Abraham had two sons, one by the slave girl and one by the free woman. <sup>23</sup> One was born by the slave girl according to the flesh, but the other was born by the free woman through promise. <sup>24</sup> These things may be interpreted as an allegory, for these women represent two covenants. One of them is from Mount Sinai and she bears children into slavery. This is Hagar. <sup>25</sup> Now Hagar represents Mount Sinai in Arabia; and she represents the present Jerusalem, for she is in slavery with her children. <sup>26</sup> But the Jerusalem that is above is free, and she is our mother. <sup>27</sup> For it is written,

"Rejoice, you barren one who does not give birth;  
cry out and shout for joy,  
you who are not suffering the pains of childbirth;  
because the children of the desolate woman are more numerous  
than those of the woman who has a husband."

<sup>28</sup> But you, brothers, like Isaac, are children of promise. <sup>29</sup> At that time the one who was born according to the flesh persecuted the one born according to the Spirit. It is the same now. <sup>30</sup> But what does the scripture say? "Send away the slave girl and her son. For the son of the slave girl will not share in the inheritance with the son of the free woman." <sup>31</sup> Therefore, brothers, we are not children of a slave girl, but of the free woman.

## Galatians 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verse 27, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Sonship

Sonship is a complex issue. Scholars have many views on Israel's sonship. Paul uses sonship to teach how being under the law differs from being free in Christ. Not all of Abraham's physical descendants inherited God's promises to him. Only his descendants through Isaac and Jacob inherited the promises. And God only adopts into his family those who follow Abraham spiritually through faith. They are children of God with an inheritance. Paul calls them "children of promise." (See: inherit, promise, spirit and faith and adoption)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Abba, Father

"Abba" is an Aramaic word. In ancient Israel, people used it to informally refer to their fathers. Paul "transliterates" its sounds by writing them with Greek letters.

---

## Galatians 4

### 4:1-7

#### What did Jesus do for Christians when he died on the cross?

[4:5, 4:7]

Paul used three words to tell people what Jesus did for Christians when he died on the cross.

Adoption: Jesus is the Son of God. He was always God's son. No one else is part of God's family in this way. However, when Jesus died on the cross, he made it possible for people to be adopted and become part of God's family. That is, if they believe in Jesus, God adopts them and they are his children in a different way. Heir: The person adopting a child gives rights to their child to inherit certain things and rights. Paul wanted Christians to know that God adopts them into his family when they believe in Jesus. This is better than being a servant or slave. In the same way Jesus has an inheritance from God, Christians receive a part of this inheritance when they go to heaven. Redeem: Paul wrote about Jesus redeeming people. When Paul was alive, people often became slaves to other people because they owed those people a lot of money. They continued to be slaves until they or someone else paid the money they owed. This was called "redemption". The redeemed person belongs to the redeemer (see: 1 Peter 1:17-18, and Matthew 20:28).

So Paul used redemption as a metaphor. He wanted to say that people start their lives in a form of slavery because they disobey God. But Jesus paid the price to redeem them when he died on the cross. This means they are not slaves to sin anymore. Instead, God has adopted them into his family.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Inherit \(Inheritance, Heir\)](#); [Redeem \(Redemption\)](#); [Metaphor](#)

### 4:8-11

#### What did Paul mean when he wrote about people or things who are "not gods at all"?

[4:8]

Paul wrote about those who are "not gods at all." He did this to warn Christians about false ideas taught by people who worshiped false gods. These people worshipped carved idols or other things that are not God. People thought and said they were gods, but they were not gods. There is only one God. Some Roman emperors did this. Some scholars think Paul wanted to warn about Jewish ideas along with these other common false teachings.

See: [Idolatry \(Idol\)](#)

### **What are the "weak and worthless elemental principles"?**

[4:9]

When he wrote about "weak and worthless elemental principles," Paul wanted to talk about false ideas the Gentiles had.

They followed false gods, astrology, and rituals for different seasons. These ideas are "weak and worthless" because they are not the truth about God. They could not help people in any way.

See: [Ritual](#); [Ritual](#)

### **What does "days and new moons and seasons and years" mean?**

[4:10]

Paul wrote about "days and new moons and seasons and years." This is because both many people followed the calendar to know how to please God. They did different things on different days in the hopes of pleasing the god or gods they worshipped. Paul wanted to say that no matter how well someone follows the calendar, this will never save people from their sins. God only saves those who believe in Jesus.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### **Why was Paul afraid for the Galatians?**

[4:11]

In 4:11, Paul said, "I am afraid for you" because the Galatians no longer followed the gospel.

When Paul was in Galatia, he taught them the gospel. That is, God saved them from their sins when they believed in Jesus. But after Paul left, other teachers taught them they needed to be circumcised and follow the Jewish laws. Unless they did this, God did not save them from their sins. This false teaching was not the gospel, but a false gospel. Paul wanted them to see that this was wrong. He wanted them to know they were in danger if they followed this wrong idea.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Circumcise \(Circumcision\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

## **4:12-20**

### **Why did Paul tell the Galatians to "become like me"?**

[4:12]

Paul told the Galatians to "become like" him because he wanted them to follow his example. In the past, Paul followed all the things the Jewish leaders taught because he thought he could please God that way. But when he believed in Jesus, he found out that he did not need to do these things in order to be saved from his sins. He wanted the Galatians to know that following the Law of Moses or the teachings of the Jewish leaders did not save them either.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### **What "physical illness" did Paul have?**

[4:13]

Scholars do not agree about what physical illness Paul wrote about in 4:12-14. Some scholars think Paul had problems seeing things. Others think he suffered from another disease that always gave him problems. Paul also wrote about a "thorn in the flesh" (see: 2 Corinthians 12:7). This may or may not be the same illness. No scholar is certain on this issue. Paul wrote in 4:13 that this illness caused him to preach to the Galatians when he traveled through that region. That is, God used this illness to get his gospel to the Galatians. Also, the Galatians treated him kindly and took care of him while he was there.

See: [Gospel](#); [Gospel](#)

**Why did Paul say he had "pains of childbirth" again?**

[4:19]

Paul said he was "in the pains of childbirth" because he wanted the Galatians to know his great love for them. That is, he loved them in the same way a mother loves her children. When a mother gives birth, there are strong pains. But after the pain, there is joy because the baby is born. When Paul used this metaphor, he wanted to say that he felt pain because the Galatians followed wrong ideas about God. Paul often spoke about those who he served as if they were his children. He wanted the Galatians to know they were children in some way and they were born in love and pain.

See: [Metaphor](#)**4:21-31****Why did Paul write about Sarah and Hagar?**

[4:22, 4:23]

Paul talked about how God saved Sarah and Hagar. He did this so that people would know that when God saves someone, it is a free gift. Hagar was a slave woman (see: Genesis 16:1-16), but Sarah was a free woman (see: Genesis 21:8-21). Paul wrote about Hagar and her son Ishmael to make readers think about people who try to please God by following laws. He also wrote about Sarah and her son Isaac to make readers think about how God saves people because of his great love. Paul used the word "promise" to talk about God's great love.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)**Why did Paul write that Hagar "gives birth to children who are slaves"?**

[4:24]

Paul wrote that Hagar "gives birth to children who are slaves," because the child of a slave woman was also a slave. The child was unable to free himself from slavery. So, Paul wanted to say that people who follow the law to please God couldn't teach other people about God's great love. They are unable to do this because they do not understand God's great love. They can only teach people to follow the law. But this is a form of slavery (see: 4:8-11).

**Why did Paul write that Hagar was "from Mount Sinai" and "represents Mount Sinai"?**

[4:25]

Paul wrote that Hagar was "from Mount Sinai" because he wanted Christians to think of her in the same way as the Law of Moses. When Paul wrote about "Mount Sinai," he wanted to talk about people who follow rules or laws to try to please God. He did not want to say that Hagar actually came from Mount Sinai. He wanted to say that Mount Sinai was the place where God gave the Law to Moses. This was long after Hagar lived. But Paul wanted readers to think about her slavery and their own slavery to the law.

See: [Law of Moses](#)**Why did Paul write about the "present Jerusalem" and "the Jerusalem that is above"?**

[4:25, 4:26]

Paul wrote about the "present Jerusalem" to make readers think about following the Law of Moses. He wanted to say that Jerusalem was the city where the Jewish Temple was located. The Temple was the center of Jewish worship. This worship followed the Law of Moses. So, like Hagar, Jerusalem represented wrong ideas about how to please God.

Paul wrote about the "Jerusalem that is above" to make readers think about God and his great power and his great love. In the Bible, this is also called the heavenly Jerusalem (See: Hebrews 12:22; Revelation 21:2; Philippians 3:20). When he said, "she is our mother," he wanted to say that people who believe in Jesus are freed from slavery to the Law of Moses. So, Paul used the Jerusalem to mean right ideas about God and his great love.

See: [Temple](#); [Temple](#)

## Why did Paul write about Isaac?

[4:28]

When Paul wrote about Isaac, he wanted readers to think about how they are saved from their sins by God's great love. Paul wanted them to remember that Isaac was born because God gave a promise to Abraham and Sarah. This was long after they were able to have children normally. So it was clear that Isaac was born because God made it happen. God fulfilled his promise. Paul wanted the Galatians to know they are like Isaac. That is, they were saved from their sins because God made this happen. God fulfilled his promise to save people through Jesus.

See: Genesis 15 See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### Galatians 01

#### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the Galatian believers that Christ came to redeem those who were under the law, and that he changed them from being slaves into being sons.

**no different from**  
"the same as"

### Galatians 02

#### guardians

people with legal responsibility for children

#### managers

people whom others trust to control what is valuable, in this case children

### Galatians 03

#### General Information:

The word "we" here refers to all Christians, including Paul's readers.

#### when we were children

Here "children" is a metaphor for being spiritually immature. Alternate translation: "when we were like children"

#### we were enslaved to the elemental principles of the world

Here "enslaved" is a metaphor for being unable to stop one's self from doing something. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the elemental principles of the world controlled us" or "we had to obey the elemental principles of the world as if we were slaves"

#### the elemental principles of the world

These words could refer to 1) the laws or moral principles of the world, or 2) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth.

### Galatians 04

#### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

### Galatians 05

#### redeem

Paul uses the metaphor of a person buying back lost property or buying the freedom of a slave as a picture of Jesus paying for his people's sins by dying on the cross.

### Galatians 06

#### you are sons

Paul uses the word for male children here because the subject is inheritance. In his culture and that of his readers, inheritance passed most commonly, but not always, to male children. He was neither specifying nor excluding female children here.

#### God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, who cries out, "Abba, Father."

By crying out "Abba, Father" the Spirit assures us that we are God's children and he loves us.

#### God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts

The heart is metonym for the part of a person that thinks and feels. Alternate translation: "God has sent his Son's Spirit to show us how to think and act"

#### his Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### who cries

The Spirit is the one who cries.

#### Abba, Father

This is the way a young child would address his father in Paul's home language, but not in the language of the Galatian readers. To keep the sense of a foreign language, translate this as a word that sounds as much like "Abba" as your language allows.

**Galatians 07****you are no longer a slave, but a son**

Paul uses the word for male child here because the subject is inheritance. In his culture and that of his readers, inheritance passed most commonly, but not always, to male children. He was neither specifying nor excluding female children here.

**you are no longer a slave ... you are also an heir**

Paul is addressing his readers as though they are one person, so "you" here is singular.

**heir**

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

**Galatians 08****General Information:**

Paul continues to rebuke the Galatians by asking rhetorical questions.

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul reminds the Galatian believers that they are again trying to live under God's laws rather than living by faith.

**those who are**

"those things that are" or "those spirits who are"

**Galatians 09****you are known by God**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows you"

**how is it that you are turning back to ... principles?**

Here "turning back to" is a metaphor for starting to pay attention to something again. This is the first of two rhetorical questions. Alternate translation: "you should not start paying attention to ... principles." or "you should not be concerned with ... principles."

**elemental principles**

See how you translated this phrase in Galatians 4:3.

**Do you want to be enslaved all over again?**

Paul uses this question to rebuke the people for behaving in a way that would make them like slaves. Alternate translation: "It seems that you want to be slaves again." or "You behave as though you wanted to be like slaves again."

**Do you want to be enslaved all over again?**

Here being "enslaved" is a metaphor for being obligated to obey certain rules or customs. Alternate translation: "Do you want to have to obey rules again like a slave has to obey his master?" or "It seems that you want to be controlled all over again!"

**Galatians 10****You observe days and new moons and seasons and years**

Paul is speaking of their being careful to celebrate certain times, thinking that doing that will make them right with God. Alternate translation: "You carefully celebrate days and new moons and seasons and years"

**Galatians 11****may have been for nothing**

"may have been useless" or "has not had any effect"

**Galatians 12****Connecting Statement:**

Paul reminds the Galatian believers how kindly they treated him when he was with them, and he encourages them to continue to trust him while he is not there with them.

**beg**

Here this means to ask or urge strongly. This is not the word used to ask for money or food or physical objects.

**brothers**

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

**You did me no wrong**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "You treated me well" or "You treated me as you should have"

**Galatians 13****disease of the flesh**

"physical disease" or "disease of the body"

**Galatians 14****and though my physical condition put you to the test**

"and though it was difficult for you to see me so physically ill"

**my physical condition**

Paul was speaking about a health problem that he had. We do not know what the problem was.

**despise**

hate very much

**Galatians 15****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 16****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.



**Galatians 17****to win you over**

"to convince you to join them"

**to shut you out**

"to shut you out from us" or "to make you stop being loyal to us"

**zealous for them**

"zealous to do what they tell you to do"

**Galatians 18****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 19****Connecting Statement:**

Paul tells believers that grace and law cannot work together.

**My little children**

This is a metaphor for disciples or followers.  
Alternate translation: "You who are disciples because of me"

**I am suffering the pains of childbirth for you until Christ is formed in you**

Paul uses childbirth as a metaphor for his concern about the Galatians. Alternate translation: "I am in pain as though I were a woman having to give birth to you, and I will continue to be in pain until Christ truly controls you"

**Galatians 20****change my tone**

Paul wishes he could sound happy instead of sounding angry or confused. Alternate Translation: "change the way I sound" or "change the way I am speaking to you" or "speak to you differently"

**Galatians 21****Tell me, you ... law, do you not listen to the law?**

Paul is introducing what he will say next. Alternate translation: "I want to tell you something, you ... law; you need to learn what the law really says." or "Let me tell you who ... law what the law really says."

**Galatians 22****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 23****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 24****Connecting Statement:**

Paul begins a story to illustrate a truth—that law and grace cannot exist together.

**These things may be interpreted as an allegory**

"This story of the two sons is like a picture of what I will tell you now"

**as an allegory**

An "allegory" is a story in which the people and things in it represent other things. In Paul's allegory, the two women referred to in Galatians 4:22 represent two covenants.

**women represent**

"women are a picture of"

**Mount Sinai**

"Mount Sinai" here is a synecdoche for the law that Moses gave to the Israelites there. Alternate translation: "Mount Sinai, where Moses gave the law to Israel"

**she bears children into slavery**

Paul treats the law as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "the people under this covenant are like slaves who have to obey the law"

**Galatians 25****she represents**

"she is a picture of"

**she is in slavery with her children**

Hagar is a slave and her children are slaves with her. Alternate translation: "Jerusalem, like Hagar, is a slave, and her children are slaves with her"

**Galatians 26****is free**

"is not bound" or "is not a slave"

**Galatians 27****Rejoice**

be happy

**you barren one ... you who are not suffering**

Here "you" refers to the barren woman and is singular.

**Galatians 28****brothers**

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

**children of promise**

Possible meanings are that the Galatians have become God's children 1) by believing God's

promise or 2) because God worked miracles to fulfill his promises to Abraham, first by giving Abraham a son and then by making the Galatians children of Abraham and thus sons of God.

### Galatians 29

#### according to the flesh

This refers to Abraham's becoming Ishmael's father by taking Hagar as a wife. Alternate translation: "by means of human action" or "because of what people did"

#### according to the Spirit

"because of something the Spirit did"

### Galatians 30

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Galatians 31

#### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

#### of a slave girl, but of the free woman

The words "we are children" are understood from the previous phrase. This can be translated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "of a slave girl. Rather, we are children of the free woman"

---

## ULB Translation Questions

### Galatians 4:1

#### How does the heir of an estate live while he is a child?

The heir lives under guardians and trustees until the time set by his father.

### Galatians 4:2

#### How does the heir of an estate live while he is a child?

The heir lives under guardians and trustees until the time set by his father.

### Galatians 4:4

#### What did God do at the right time in history?

God, at the right time, sent forth his Son to redeem those under the law.

### Galatians 4:5

#### What did God do at the right time in history?

God, at the right time, sent forth his Son to redeem those under the law.

#### How did God bring children who were under the law into his family?

God adopted as sons the children who were under the law.

### Galatians 4:6

#### What does God send forth into the hearts of his children?

God sends forth the Spirit of his Son into the hearts of his children.

### Galatians 4:8

#### Before we know God, to whom are we slaves?

Before we know God, we are slaves to the spirits that rule the world, who are not gods at all.

### Galatians 4:9

#### Paul was perplexed that the Galatians were returning to what?

Paul was perplexed that the Galatians were returning again to the ruling spirits of the world.

#### As he sees the Galatians turning back, what does Paul fear for them?

Paul fears that the Galatians will become slaves again, and that he has labored in vain over them.

### Galatians 4:13

#### When Paul first came to the Galatians, what problem did he have?

When Paul first came to the Galatians, he had a physical illness.

### Galatians 4:14

#### Despite Paul's problem, how did the Galatians receive him?

Despite Paul's problem, the Galatians received Paul as an angel of God, as Christ Jesus.

### Galatians 4:17

#### Who are the false teachers in Galatia trying to separate?

The false teachers are trying to separate the Galatians from Paul.

### Galatians 4:21

#### Under what are the false teachers trying to put the Galatians?

The false teachers are trying to put the Galatians back under the law.

**Galatians 4:22**

**From which two kinds of women did Abraham have two sons?**

Abraham had two sons, one from a slave woman and one from a free woman.

**Galatians 4:24**

**How does Hagar represent the present Jerusalem?**

Jerusalem, like Hagar, is a slave, and their children are slaves.

**Galatians 4:25**

**How does Hagar represent the present Jerusalem?**

Jerusalem, like Hagar, is a slave, and their children are slaves.

**Galatians 4:26**

**What does Paul say about the Jerusalem that is above?**

The Jerusalem that is above is free, and she is the mother of Paul and the other believers.

**Galatians 4:28**

**How are believers in Christ like Isaac?**

Isaac and believers in Christ are children of promise.

**Galatians 4:29**

**Who persecutes the children of the promise?**

The children of the flesh persecute the children of the promise.

**Galatians 4:30**

**What do the children of the slave woman inherit?**

The children of the slave woman do not inherit along with the children of the free woman.

**Galatians 4:31**

**Believers in Christ are children of which person?**

Believers in Christ are children of the free woman.

## Chapter 5

<sup>1</sup> For freedom Christ has set us free. Stand firm, therefore, and do not again be subject to a yoke of slavery.

<sup>2</sup> Look, I, Paul, say to you that if you let yourselves be circumcised, Christ will not benefit you in any way.

<sup>3</sup> I testify again to every man who lets himself be circumcised that he is obligated to obey the whole law. <sup>4</sup> You are cut off from Christ, you who would be justified by the law; you no longer experience grace. <sup>5</sup> For through the Spirit, by faith, we eagerly wait for the hope of righteousness. <sup>6</sup> In Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision has value, but only faith working through love. <sup>7</sup> You were running well. Who prevented you from obeying the truth? <sup>8</sup> This persuasion does not come from him who calls you! <sup>9</sup> A little yeast leavens the whole batch of dough. <sup>10</sup> I have confidence in the Lord that you will think nothing different. The one who is troubling you will suffer the judgment, whoever he is. <sup>11</sup> Brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted? In that case the stumbling block of the cross has been removed. <sup>12</sup> As for those who are disturbing you, I wish they would cut themselves off!

<sup>13</sup> For you were called to freedom, brothers. But do not use your freedom as an opportunity for the flesh; rather, through love serve one another. <sup>14</sup> For the whole law is fulfilled in one word: "You must love your neighbor as yourself." <sup>15</sup> But if you bite and devour one another, watch out that you are not consumed by one another.

<sup>16</sup> But I say, walk by the Spirit and you will not carry out the desires of the flesh. <sup>17</sup> For the desires of the flesh are against the Spirit, and the desires of the Spirit are against the flesh. For these oppose each other, so that you cannot do the things you want. <sup>18</sup> But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law. <sup>19</sup> Now the works of the flesh are evident: sexual immorality, impurity, sensuality, <sup>20</sup> idolatry, sorcery, hostilities, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, dissension, divisions, <sup>21</sup> envy, drunkenness, drunken celebrations, and things like these. I warn you, as I warned you before, that those who practice such things will not inherit the kingdom of God. <sup>22</sup> But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith, <sup>23</sup> gentleness, and self-control; against such things there is no law. <sup>24</sup> Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires.

<sup>25</sup> If we live by the Spirit, let us also walk by the Spirit. <sup>26</sup> Let us not become boastful, provoking one another, envying one another.

---

## Galatians 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul continues writing about the law of Moses as if it were something that traps or enslaves a person. (See: lawofmoses)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Fruit of the Spirit

The phrase "the fruit of the Spirit" is not plural, even though it begins a list of several things. Translators should keep the singular form if possible. (See: fruit)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Illustrations

Paul uses several metaphors in this chapter to illustrate his points and help explain complicated issues.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

**"You are cut off from Christ, you who would be justified by the law; you no longer experience grace."**

Some scholars think Paul teaches that being circumcised causes a person to lose their salvation. Other scholars think Paul means that obeying the law to try to get right with God will keep a person from being saved by grace. (See: [grace](#))

---

## Galatians 5

### 5:1-12

**Why did Paul tell the Galatians not to go back to slavery to the Law of Moses?**

[5:1]

Paul told the Galatians that becoming circumcised and trying to follow the Law of Moses made Jesus's life, death, and resurrection useless to them. Also, Paul told them that Jesus had set them free from all of the Jewish laws. He continued to write about the freedom Christians have because of Jesus. Paul again wrote that they should not get circumcised.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

**How did Paul talk about the law and "grace"?**

[5:4]

Paul reminded Christians in Galatia that if they chose to be circumcised then they "no longer experience grace." Some scholars think Paul said that circumcised Christians lost what God did for them when he saved them. Other scholars think Paul said that Christians no longer experience God's power working in them and through them. What is clear is that Paul told the Galatians not to be circumcised because they lost something important.

Also, Paul wanted his readers to know that circumcision was the same as being a slave to the Law of Moses. He used words that talk about a hard choice between the law and God's great love, or "grace." Christians can choose to follow rules and laws to please God. Or they can choose to believe in Jesus and live by this belief. But they do not please God by doing both of these things. So he told them they must not be circumcised and become a slave to the law. He called this a "yoke of slavery" (see: 5:1).

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Grace](#); [Law of Moses](#)

**What does the Holy Spirit do for Christians?**

[5:5]

In 5:5 (see also: Romans 8), Paul told Christians that the Holy Spirit gives them faith to "wait for the hope of righteousness" (δικαιοσύνη/g1343). That is, while they are alive, they need to believe in Jesus and do the same types of things that Jesus did while he was on earth. They were to know with confidence that God was going to do these things. The Holy Spirit reminds Christians they are going to heaven. In heaven, God makes them completely righteous.

**Why did Paul use the metaphor about yeast and dough?**

[5:9]

When Paul wrote about yeast and dough, he used a metaphor to tell the Galatians that even a little false teaching is very bad for the church. He was telling them to completely resist false teachers.

Paul wrote in 5:8 that the false teachers taught ideas that Jesus did not teach. Paul and the other apostles taught people what Jesus taught. The false teachers taught people ideas not from God.

So, in 5:9 Paul quoted a proverb that most people understood (see also: 1 Corinthians 5:6). Bakers use leaven or yeast to make bread rise for baking. It does not take much leaven or yeast to make bread rise. In the same way, it does not take much false teaching to make the Galatians think wrong things about God. Jesus also spoke this proverb (see Mark 8:15).

See: [Yeast \(Leaven\)](#); [Church](#); [Apostle](#); [Proverb](#); [Yeast \(Leaven\)](#)

### **Why did Paul write that certain people needed to "castrate themselves"?**

[5:12]

Scholars do not know why Paul wrote that certain people needed to "castrate themselves." He wrote this about the false teachers. Paul did not want them to actually do this. Instead, he did not want the Galatians not even to talk with these false teachers. These scholars think Paul wanted false teachers to be removed from the church, so they no longer mislead the Galatians with their false teaching.

Some scholars do not think Paul was angry. They think he was passionate that the Christians in Galatia continued to know and follow the truth he taught them. It is clear that Paul did not want the Galatian Christians to follow the false teachers in any way.

**Advice to translators:** When a man castrated himself, he cut off his penis.

### **5:13-26**

#### **How were Christians to live their lives?**

[5:13, 5:14, 5:15]

Paul told Christians how to live their lives.

First, Paul wrote that Christians needed to love each other (see 5:13-14). Jesus taught this and so did the Old Testament. Paul also told readers to not attack each other with words. This caused everyone to be hurt.

Second, Paul wrote that people are able to do things in two ways. All people are able to follow the "sinful nature." This makes them do bad things. Christians choose to do things in the way the Holy Spirit guides them. This will make them do good things. Paul said there was a "conflict" between the sinful nature and the Holy Spirit in a Christian. He wrote this to say how important it is for each Christian to choose to do things in the way the Holy Spirit says to do it. He wanted to say that doing some good things and doing some bad things would not please God.

See: [Sinful Nature](#)

#### **What are the "works of the sinful nature"?**

[5:19, 5:20, 5:21]

Paul warned Christians not to "practice" or do the "works of the sinful nature." These are things that displease God greatly. Paul listed some things people do that are "works of the sinful nature." Then he wrote "and things like these." That is, he wanted to say that he did not list all the "works of the sinful nature." But he listed enough for readers to think of other things like them.

Some scholars think Paul wanted to say that these are things people do because they do not believe in Jesus. Other scholars think Paul warned Christians that they would not receive rewards if they disobeyed God. When a person believes in Jesus, God gives that person the Holy Spirit to guide them in not doing these things. However, the person still must choose not to do them. So Paul warned Christians about doing the "works of the sinful nature."

See: 1 Corinthians 6:9-10; Ephesians 5:5; and Revelation 22:15

See: [Sinful Nature](#)

#### **What did Paul mean by "fruit"?**

[5:22]

Paul wrote a metaphor concerning fruit to say that Christians need to be guided by the Holy Spirit. People can see fruit growing on trees. In the same way, people can see what Christians do when the Holy Spirit guides them to do things that are good. (See: Matthew 3:8, and Luke 3:8)

See: [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#); [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#)

### **What is the purpose of the fruit of the Spirit?**

[5:22]

Paul wrote about the Holy Spirit producing "fruit" inside Christians. He used a metaphor in the same way that Jesus used a metaphor to talk about Christians being part of the "vine" (see: John 15). Jesus and Paul both wanted to say that God wants Christians to get their help from God. In the same way that that fruit is fed by the tree that it grows on, Christians are to be "fed" by the Holy Spirit.

Paul also wanted to say that fruit is seen on a tree or vine. In the same way, Christians say and do things that are seen by others when they follow the Holy Spirit. When Christians do the things the Holy Spirit tells them to do, they will do what Jesus did. This shows other people what to do to honor God. This can cause other people to believe in Jesus.

The fruit of the Spirit is the opposite of what Paul wrote about in 5:19-21.

See: 2 Corinthians 6:6; Ephesians 4:2; 5:9; Colossians 13:12-15

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

### **What are the "Fruits of the Spirit"?**

[5:22, 5:23]

The "fruit of the Spirit" is one thing, but several things are part of this one thing. Paul listed the good things that are a part of the fruit of the Spirit. He wanted to say that the Holy Spirit gives Christians all of these things to use, so they can do the things that please God.

### **Why did Paul tell Christians they "crucified the sinful nature"?**

[5:24]

When Paul wrote about Christians crucifying the sinful nature, he used a metaphor about extreme or harsh punishment. Readers understood that crucifixion kills people. So Paul wanted readers to know that they need to have their sins completely removed. This happens when God saves them because they believe in Jesus. But they need to make sure they continue to follow what the Holy Spirit tells them to do.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Sinful Nature](#); [Metaphor](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

## **Galatians 01**

### **Connecting Statement:**

Paul applies the allegory in the previous chapter by reminding the believers to use their liberty in Christ because all the law is fulfilled in loving neighbors as ourselves.

### **For freedom Christ has set us free**

"It is so that we can be free that Christ has set us free." It is implied that Christ sets believers free from the old covenant. Here freedom from the old covenant is a metaphor for not being obligated to obey it. Alternate translation: "Christ has set us free from the old covenant so that we might be free" or "Christ has set us free so that we might live as free people"

### **Stand firm**

Standing firm here represents being determined not to change. How they are not to change can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Do not give in to the arguments of people who teach something else" or "Be determined to stay free"

### **do not again be subject to a yoke of slavery**

Here being under control of a yoke of slavery represents being obligated to obey the law. Alternate translation: "do not live like one who is under the control of a yoke of slavery to the law"

**Galatians 02****if you let yourselves be circumcised**

Paul is using circumcision as a metonym for Judaism. Alternate translation: "if you turn to the Jewish religion"

**Galatians 03****I testify**

"I declare" or "I serve as a witness"

**to every man who lets himself be circumcised**

Paul is using circumcision as a metonym for being Jewish. Alternate translation: "to every person who has become a Jew"

**he is obligated to obey**

"he must obey"

**Galatians 04****You are cut off from Christ**

Here "cut off" is a metaphor for separation from Christ. Alternate translation: "You have ended your relationship with Christ" or "You are no longer united with Christ"

**you who would be justified by the law**

Paul is speaking ironically here. He actually teaches that no one can be justified by trying to do the deeds required by the law. Alternate translation: "all you who think you can be justified by doing the deeds required by the law" or "you who want to be justified by the law"

**you no longer experience grace**

Who that grace comes from can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "God will not be gracious to you"

**Galatians 05****General Information:**

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and those who oppose the circumcision of Christians. He is probably including the Galatians.

**For through the Spirit**

"This is because through the Spirit"

**by faith, we eagerly wait for the hope of righteousness**

Possible meanings are 1) "we are waiting by faith for the hope of righteousness" or 2) "we are waiting for the hope of righteousness that comes by faith."

**we eagerly wait**

"We wait with excitement" or "we wait with great desire"

**for the hope of righteousness**

They confidently expect that God will make them righteous. Alternate translation: "for the righteousness that we hope for" or "for the righteousness that we confidently expect to receive"

**Galatians 06****neither circumcision nor uncircumcision**

These are metonymy for being a Jew or a non-Jew. Alternate translation: "neither being a Jew nor not being a Jew"

**neither ... has value, but only faith working through love**

"neither ... has value; rather, God is concerned with our faith in him, which we show by loving others"

**has value**

"has meaning" or "gives value to a person" or "makes God think a person is important"

**Galatians 07****You were running**

"You were practicing what Jesus taught"

**Galatians 08****This persuasion does not come from him who calls you**

"The one who persuades you to do that is not God, the one who calls you"

**him who calls you**

What he calls them to can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the one who calls you to be his people"

**persuasion**

To persuade someone is to get that person to change what he believes and so to act differently.

**Galatians 09****A little yeast leavens the whole batch of dough**

Paul uses this proverb to mean that a small part of something affects the whole thing. In this case, one person who is teaching something false can harm the entire Christian community.

**Galatians 10****you will think nothing different**

"you will not believe anything different from what I am telling you"

**The one who is troubling you will suffer the judgment**

"God will punish the one who is troubling you"

**is troubling you**

"is causing you to be uncertain about what is truth" or "stirs up trouble among you"



**whoever he is**

Possible meanings are 1) Paul does not know the names of the people who are telling the Galatians that they need to obey the law of Moses or 2) Paul does not want the Galatians to care about whether those who "confuse" them are rich or poor or great or small or religious or not religious.

**Galatians 11****Brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted?**

Paul uses this rhetorical question to show the evidence that he is not proclaiming circumcision. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "Brothers, you can see that I am not proclaiming circumcision because I am still being persecuted."

**Brothers**

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

**if I still proclaim circumcision**

"if I still proclaim that men have to be circumcised"

**why am I still being persecuted?**

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "why are the Jews still persecuting me?" (See:

**In that case the stumbling block of the cross has been removed**

Paul is describing a situation that has not happened as evidence that he does not preach circumcision. Since the stumbling block of the cross has not been removed, that is evidence that Paul does not preach circumcision.

**In that case the stumbling block of the cross has been removed**

Paul had just said that he was still being persecuted. Here he implies that if the offense of the cross were removed, the Jews would have no reason to persecute him. The relationship between the two sentences can be made clearer by making this implied information explicit. Alternate translation: "If I am still preaching circumcision, then the stumbling block of the cross has been removed, and there is no reason for the Jews to persecute me"

**In that case**

"If I were still proclaiming circumcision" or "If I were still saying that people need to be circumcised"

**the stumbling block of the cross has been removed**

This can be expressed without the passive form. Alternate translation: "the cross would no longer be a stumbling block" or "the cross would no longer cause people to stumble"

**the stumbling block of the cross**

Here the words "stumbling block" are a metaphor for something that angers or offends some people and leads them to reject the truth. In this case, teaching that people are saved by "the cross" offends those who believe a person is saved by obeying the law. These people "stumble" when they reject the teaching about the cross.

**the cross**

Here "the cross" is a metonym for the teaching that because Jesus Christ died on the cross and is alive again, God saves people who believe in Christ. People do not have to be circumcised or become Jews. Alternate translation: "the message about the cross"

**Galatians 12****cut themselves off**

Possible meanings are 1) literal, to cut off their male organs so as to become eunuchs or 2) metaphorical, completely withdraw from the Christian community.

**Galatians 13****For**

Paul is giving the reason for his words in Galatians 5:12.

**you were called to freedom**

This can be expressed in an active form. Alternate translation: "Christ has called you to freedom"

**you were called to freedom**

It is implied that Christ has set believers free from the old covenant. Here freedom from the old covenant is a metaphor for not being obligated to obey it. Alternate translation: "You were called to freedom from the old covenant" or "Christ has chosen you to not be obligated to the old covenant"

**brothers**

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

**an opportunity for the flesh**

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for people's sinful nature. The relationship between the opportunity and the sinful nature can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "an opportunity for you to behave according to your sinful nature"

**Galatians 14****the whole law is fulfilled in one word**

The word "word" here is a metonym for a commandment. Possible meanings are 1) "you can state the whole law in just one commandment, which is this" or 2) "by obeying one commandment, you obey all the commandments, and that one commandment is this."

**You must love your neighbor as yourself**

The words "you," "your," and "yourself" are all singular.

**Galatians 15****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 16****Connecting Statement:**

Paul explains how the Spirit gives control over sin.

**walk by the Spirit**

Walking is a metaphor for living. Alternate translation: "conduct your life in the power of the Holy Spirit" or "live your life in dependence on the Spirit"

**you will not carry out the desires of the flesh**

"you will not do what your sinful nature desires" or "you will not do the sinful things that you, a sinner, want to do"

**the desires of the flesh**

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the sinful nature and is spoken of as if it were a person and wanted to sin. Alternate translation: "what you want to do because of your sinful nature" or "the things you want to do because you are sinful"

**Galatians 17****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 18****not under the law**

"not obligated to obey the law of Moses"

**Galatians 19****the works of the flesh**

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the sinful nature. The sinful nature is spoken of as if it were a person who does things. The abstract noun "works" can be translated with the verb "does." Alternate translation: "the things the sinful nature does" or "the things people do because of their sinful nature" or "the things people do because they are sinful"

**Galatians 20****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Galatians 21****inherit**

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

**Galatians 22****the fruit of the Spirit is love ... faith**

Here "fruit" here is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Alternate translation: "what the Spirit produces is love ... faith" or "the Spirit produces in God's people love ... faith"

**Galatians 23****gentleness ... self-control**

The list of characteristics described as "the fruit of the Spirit," which begins in the previous verse with the words "love, joy, peace," ends here. The word "fruit" is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome."

**Galatians 24****have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires**

Paul speaks of the sinful nature of Christians who have refused to live by it as if it were a person and they have killed it on a cross. Alternate translation: "refuse to live according the sinful nature with its passions and desires, as if they killed it on a cross"

**the flesh with its passions and desires**

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the sinful nature. The sinful nature is spoken of as if it were a person that had passions and desires. Alternate translation: "their sinful nature and the things they strongly want to do because of it"

**passions and desires**

If your language does not have different words for "passions" and "desires," you can treat this as a hendiadys or doublet that simply emphasizes the idea of desires that are wrong, that harm the one who desires and if fulfilled would harm other people.

**Galatians 25****If we live by the Spirit**

"Since God's Spirit has caused us to be alive"

**walk by the Spirit**

"Walk" here is a metaphor for living every day. Alternate translation: "allow the Holy Spirit to guide us so we do things that please and honor God"

**Galatians 26****Let us**

"We should"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Galatians 5:1

**For what purpose has Christ set us free?**  
For freedom Christ has set us free.

### Galatians 5:2

**What did Paul warn the Galatians would happen if they became circumcised?**  
Paul said that if the Galatians became circumcised, Christ would not benefit them in any way.

### Galatians 5:4

**What did Paul warn would happen to all the Galatians who would seek to be justified by following the law?**  
Paul warned that all the Galatians who would seek to be justified by following the law would be alienated from Christ and would fall away from grace.

### Galatians 5:6

**As opposed to circumcision and uncircumcised, what is the only thing that means anything in Christ Jesus?**  
In Christ Jesus, only faith working through love means anything.

### Galatians 5:10

**Of what is Paul confident regarding the one who has confused the Galatians about the gospel?**  
Paul is confident that the one who has confused the Galatians about the gospel will bear God's judgment.

### Galatians 5:11

**Paul says that proclaiming circumcision does what?**  
Paul says that proclaiming circumcision the stumbling block of the cross would be destroyed.

### Galatians 5:13

**How are believers not to use their freedom in Christ?**  
Believers are to not use their freedom in Christ as an opportunity for the flesh.

**How are believers to use their freedom in Christ?**  
Believers are to use their freedom in Christ to serve one another in love.

### Galatians 5:14

**The whole law is fulfilled in what one commandment?**  
The whole law is fulfilled in the commandment, "You must love your neighbor as yourself".

### Galatians 5:16

**How can believers not fulfill the lust of the flesh?**  
Believers can live by the Spirit and not fulfill the lust of the flesh.

### Galatians 5:17

**What two things are opposed to each other within the believer?**  
The Spirit and the flesh are opposed to each other within the believer.

### Galatians 5:20

**What are three examples of works of the flesh?**  
Three examples of works of the flesh are any three of the following list: sexual immorality, impurity, lustfulness, idolatry, sorcery, hostility, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, dissension, sectarian division, envy, drunkenness, and drunken riots.

### Galatians 5:21

**What are three examples of works of the flesh?**  
Three examples of works of the flesh are any three of the following list: sexual immorality, impurity, lustfulness, idolatry, sorcery, hostility, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, dissension, sectarian division, envy, drunkenness, and drunken riots.

**What will those who practice the works of the flesh not receive?**  
Those who practice the works of the flesh will not inherit the kingdom of God.

### Galatians 5:22

**What is the fruit of the Spirit?**  
The fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith, gentleness, and self-control.

### Galatians 5:23

**What is the fruit of the Spirit?**  
The fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith, gentleness, and self-control.

### Galatians 5:24

**Those who belong to Christ Jesus have done what with the flesh and its passions?**  
Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh and its passions.



## Chapter 6

<sup>1</sup> Brothers, if someone is caught in any trespass, you who are spiritual should restore him in a spirit of gentleness. Be concerned about yourself, so you also may not be tempted. <sup>2</sup> Carry one another's burdens, and so fulfill the law of Christ. <sup>3</sup> For if anyone thinks he is something when he is nothing, he deceives himself. <sup>4</sup> Each one should examine his own work, and then his reason to boast will be in himself alone and not in someone else. <sup>5</sup> For each one will carry his own burden.

<sup>6</sup> The one who is taught the word must share all good things with the one who teaches. <sup>7</sup> Do not be deceived. God is not mocked, for whatever a man plants, that he will also reap. <sup>8</sup> For he who plants seed to his own flesh, from the flesh will reap destruction. The one who plants seed to the Spirit, from the Spirit will reap eternal life. <sup>9</sup> Let us not become weary in doing good, for at the right time we will reap a harvest, if we do not give up. <sup>10</sup> So then, as we have the opportunity, let us do good to all people, especially to those who belong to the household of faith.

<sup>11</sup> See what large letters I write to you with my own hand. <sup>12</sup> Those who want to make a good impression in the flesh are trying to compel you to be circumcised. They do this only to avoid being persecuted for the cross of Christ. <sup>13</sup> For not even those who circumcised themselves keep the law, but they want you to be circumcised so that they may boast about your flesh. <sup>14</sup> But may I never boast except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, through which the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world. <sup>15</sup> For neither circumcision counts for anything nor uncircumcision, but what counts is a new creation. <sup>16</sup> To all who walk according to this standard, peace and mercy be upon them, even upon the Israel of God.

<sup>17</sup> From now on let no one trouble me, for I carry on my body the marks of Jesus.

<sup>18</sup> The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit, brothers. Amen.

## Galatians 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter concludes Paul's letter. His final words address some issues that do not seem to be connected to the rest of his letter.

### Brothers

Paul writes the words in this chapter to Christians. He calls them "brothers." This refers to Paul's Christian brothers and not his Jewish brothers.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### New Creation

People who are born again are a new creation in Christ. Christians have been given new life in Christ. They have a new nature in them after they come to faith in Christ. To Paul, this is more significant than a person's ancestry. (See: bornagain and faith)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is contrasted with "spirit." In this chapter, flesh is also used to refer to the physical body. (See: flesh and sin and spirit)

## Galatians 6

### 6:1-5

#### How are Christians to treat other Christians who commit sins?

[6:1]

Paul told the Galatians that when another Christian sins, the Christians who know that person is to "restore him in a spirit of gentleness." Sometimes people sin and need to be corrected (see: Matthew 18). When a Christian sins, they can dishonor God and hurt other people. But other Christians need to help the person know he sinned. They need to help him repent. That is, so God will forgive him of those sins. They need to act kindly, and they need to be ready to forgive the other person. This helps the person to honor God again.

A Christian needs to do this because he knows that he also has sinned and is not better than the other person who sinned. He knows God forgives him when he repents. So, he needs to be humble and to keep thinking about what he does and thinks. Then, he will sin less himself.

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

#### What was the law of Christ?

[6:2]

When Paul told the Galatians to "fulfill the law of Christ" (6:3), he wanted to say they are to love each other. Paul wanted his readers to understand that loving one another was far better than the laws that the false teachers told them to follow. When people love each other, it pleases God more than when they just follow laws.

Jesus spoke often about how his followers needed to love other people. He said that the greatest rule is that a person must love God. But the second greatest rule is that a person must love other people. So, Paul called this the "law of Christ."

Sometimes when Jesus talked about love, Jesus quoted from the Old Testament (see: Leviticus 19:18; Deuteronomy 6:5). So Paul may have said "law of Christ" to make his readers think that even in the Old Testament, the Law of Moses, God said he wanted people to love each other.

See: Matthew 5:43, 22:39; Mark 12:30-31

See: [Law of Moses](#)

### 6:6-10

#### What did Paul teach the Galatians about "planting" and "gathering" or "harvesting"?

[6:7, 6:8, 6:9]

Paul wrote about "planting," "gathering," and "harvesting" to say that Christians need to do good to all people. God will favor them if they are good to others. He wanted his readers to understand that the things they said and affected both them and other people. To explain this, he used the metaphor of planting seeds and waiting for them to grow. He did this to say that Christians who do things that honor God will receive good back from God. This does not always happen right away. But if the Christians keep doing good things, sooner or later God will bring good things to them. In the same way, if they do bad things, sooner or later they receive bad things.

See: [Metaphor](#)

### 6:11-18

#### Why did Paul talk about writing "large letters"?

[6:11]

Paul talked about writing in "large letters" (6:11) to tell the Galatians that this letter was really from him. He needed to do this because of two things:

First, many scholars think Paul dictated to another person the words for this and other letters he wrote. Paul signed his letters before he sent them to the churches. Second, many scholars think Paul suffered from physical illnesses. These made it hard for him to read and write. This caused him to only write in large letters. His large signature looked very different from the rest of the letter.

So Paul wrote about this to tell his readers that the letter really was from him.

### **Why did Paul write about circumcision again?**

[6:12]

Paul wrote about circumcision again because this message was so great. He wanted his readers to know that circumcision and following the Law of Moses did not honor God. He wrote about this throughout this letter. As he ended the letter, he wrote about circumcision one more time to help readers know how great was this issue.

So, he again warned about these false teachers (6:12). These people wanted to make the Galatian Christians obey the Law of Moses. That is, they wanted them to be circumcised. This disturbed Paul greatly. So he again wrote to the Christians that they did not need to be circumcised.

Paul also wrote (6:13) that not even the false teachers followed all the laws they wanted the Galatians to follow. Paul accused them of making the Galatians follow the laws because they wanted to boast about making new converts.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### **What did Paul mean about crucifixion and the cross?**

[6:13, 6:14]

When Paul wrote about the cross and crucifixion (6:14), he wanted to say that Jesus was the greatest thing he possessed. Nothing in the world mattered to Paul in the same way believing in, trusting in, and following Jesus mattered to him. So he used the metaphor about the cross to tell his readers how important is Jesus. Paul called the things he did before he believed in Jesus dead. He wanted his readers to know that he thought of his actions in the same way he thought of dead people. That is, they did not do anything for him. He wanted his readers to think about their own past actions in the same way he did his own.

See: 1 Corinthians 1:17, Galatians 5:11, and Philippians 3:18

See: [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#); [Metaphor](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#)

### **Why did Paul write about the "Israel of God"?**

[6:16]

Some scholars think Paul wrote about the "Israel of God" to tell the Galatians that Christians are truly God's people. Paul wanted his readers to think about what he wrote in Galatians 3. The false teachers wanted the Galatians to be circumcised. This joined them to "Israel" by following Law of Moses. The false teachers said this pleased God and made them God's people. But Paul taught that when people believe and trust in Jesus and God completely, that pleases God. And this makes them God's people. So anyone who believes in Jesus is the true "Israel of God."

Other scholars think that Paul was giving special greetings to the Jewish Christians. They do not think that Christians become Jews or the "Israel of God."

See: [People of God](#)

### **What were Paul's "marks"?**

[6:17]

When Paul said that he had "marks of Jesus" on his body (6:17), he wanted readers to think about the scars he possessed from his stoning (see: Acts 14:19), sicknesses (see: 2 Corinthians 12:7-9) and violence (see: Acts 16:22; 2 Corinthians 11:23-29). These were his "marks." When he called them "marks of Jesus," he wanted his readers to think about the marks and scars Jesus got when the Romans beat him and crucified him. In the same way Jesus possessed permanent marks on his body, so did Paul. Paul wanted to say that no matter what happened to him, he followed Jesus.

Some scholars think that the Greek word for "marks" is the same word used for tattoos. Tattoos identified the wearer as a slave, criminal, or prisoner. That is, Paul wanted to say he was a slave to Jesus.

## Galatians 01

### Connecting Statement:

Paul teaches believers how they should treat other believers and how God rewards.

### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

### if someone

"if anyone among you"

### if someone is caught in any trespass

Possible meanings are 1) someone else found that person in the act. Alternate translation: "if someone is discovered in an act of sin" or 2) that person committed the sin without intending to do evil. Alternate translation: "if someone gave in and sinned"

### you who are spiritual

"those of you who are guided by the Spirit" or "you who are living in the guidance of the Spirit"

### restore him

"correct the person who sinned" or "exhort the person who sinned to return to a correct relationship with God"

### in a spirit of gentleness

Possible meanings are 1) that the Spirit is directing the one who is offering correction or 2) "with an attitude of gentleness" or "in a kind way."

### Be concerned about yourself, ... tempted.

These words treat the Galatians as though they are all one person to emphasize that he is talking to each of them. Alternate translation: "Be concerned about yourselves ... tempted." or "I say to each one of you, 'Be concerned about yourself, ... tempted.'"

### so you also may not be tempted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that nothing will tempt you also to sin"

## Galatians 02

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Galatians 03

### For if

"Because if." The words that follow tell why the Galatians should 1) "carry one other's burdens" (Galatians 6:2) or 2) be careful that they themselves are not tempted (Galatians 6:1) or 3) "not become conceited" (Galatians 5:26).

### he is something

"he is someone important" or "he is better than others"

### he is nothing

"he is not important" or "he is not better than others"

## Galatians 04

### Each one should

"Each person must"

## Galatians 05

### each one will carry his own burden

"each person will be judged by his own work only" or "each person will be responsible for his own work only"

### each one will

"each person will"

## Galatians 06

### The one

"The person"

### the word

"the message," everything God has said or commanded

## Galatians 07

### for whatever a man plants, that he will also reap

Planting represents doing things that end in some kind of result, and gathering in represents experiencing the results of what one has done. Alternate translation: "for just as a farmer gathers in the fruit of whatever kind of seeds he plants, so everyone experiences the results of whatever he does"



**whatever a man plants**

Paul is not specifying males here. Alternate translation: "whatever a person plants" or "whatever someone plants"

**Galatians 08****plants seed to his own flesh**

Planting seeds is a metaphor for doing deeds that will have consequences later. In this case, the person is doing sinful actions because of his sinful nature. Alternate translation: "plants seed according to what he wants because of his sinful nature" or "does the things he wants to do because of his sinful nature"

**will reap destruction**

God punishing the person is spoken of as if the person were harvesting a crop. Alternate translation: "will receive punishment for what he did"

**plants seed to the Spirit**

Planting seeds is a metaphor for doing deeds that will have consequences later. In this case, the person is doing good actions because he is listening to God's Spirit. Alternate translation: "does the things God's Spirit loves"

**from the Spirit will reap eternal life**

"will receive eternal life as a reward from God's Spirit"

**Galatians 09****Let us not become weary in doing good**

"We should continue to do good"

**doing good**

doing good to others for their well-being

**for at the right time**

"for in due time" or "because at the time God has chosen"

**Galatians 10****So then**

"As a result of this" or "Because of this"

**especially to those**

"most of all to those" or "in particular to those"

**those who belong to the household of faith**

"those who are members of God's family through faith in Christ"

**Galatians 11****Connecting Statement:**

As Paul closes this letter, he gives one more reminder that the law does not save and that the Galatians should remember the cross of Christ.

**large letters**

This can mean that Paul wants to emphasize 1) the statements that follow or 2) that this letter came from him.

**with my own hand**

Possible meanings are 1) Paul probably had a helper who wrote most of this letter as Paul told him what to write, but Paul himself wrote this last part of the letter or 2) Paul wrote the whole letter himself.

**Galatians 12****make a good impression**

"cause others to think well of them" or "cause others to think that they are good people"

**in the flesh**

"with visible evidence" or "by their own efforts"

**to compel**

"to force" or "to strongly influence"

**only to avoid being persecuted for the cross of Christ**

"so that the Jews will not persecute them for claiming that the cross of Christ alone is what saves people"

**the cross of Christ**

These words are a metonym for faith that Christ died on the cross so God would forgive his people's sins. Alternate translation: "believing that God forgives his people's sins because Jesus died on the cross"

**Galatians 13****so that they may boast about your flesh**

"so that they may be proud that they have added you to the people who try to keep the law"

**Galatians 14****But may I never boast except in the cross**

"I do not ever want to boast in anything other than the cross" or "May I boast only in the cross"

**the world has been crucified to me**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I think of the world as already dead" or "I treat the world like a criminal God has killed on a cross"

**I to the world**

The words "have been crucified" are understood from the phrase before this. Alternate translation: "and I have been crucified to the world"

**I to the world**

Possible meanings are 1) "the world thinks of me as already dead" or 2) "the world treats me like a criminal that God has killed on the cross"

**the world**

Possible meanings are 1) the people of the world, those who care nothing for God or 2) the things that those who care nothing for God think are important.

**Galatians 15**

**neither circumcision counts for anything nor uncircumcision**

"neither circumcision nor uncircumcision is important to God"

**a new creation**

Possible meanings are 1) a new believer in Jesus Christ or 2) the new life of a believer.

**Galatians 16**

**walk according to this standard**

The word "walk" here is a metaphor for living life, and a standard is something against which people measure other things. Alternate translation: "live this way"

**peace and mercy be upon them, even upon the Israel of God**

Possible meanings are 1) that believers in general are the Israel of God or 2) "may peace and mercy be upon Gentile believers and upon the Israel of

God" or 3) "may peace be upon those who follow the rule, and may mercy be upon even the Israel of God."

**Galatians 17**

**From now on**

This can also mean "Lastly" or "As I end this letter."

**let no one trouble me**

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is commanding the Galatians not to trouble him, "I am commanding you this: do not trouble me," or 2) Paul is telling the Galatians that he is commanding all people not to trouble him, "I am commanding everyone this: do not trouble me," or 3) Paul is expressing a desire, "I do not want anyone to trouble me."

**trouble me**

Possible meanings are 1) "speak of these matters to me" or 2) "cause me hardship" or "give me hard work."

**for I carry on my body the marks of Jesus**

These marks were scars from people who beat and whipped Paul because they did not like him teaching about Jesus. Alternate translation: "for the scars on my body show that I serve Jesus"

**Galatians 18**

**The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit**

The word "your" here refers to the Galatians and so is plural. The words "your spirit" are a synecdoche and represent the people themselves. Alternate translation: "May our Lord Jesus Christ be kind to you"

**brothers**

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Galatians 6:1**

**What should those who are spiritual do if a man is caught in some transgression?**

Those who are spiritual should restore that man in a spirit of gentleness.

**For what danger must those who are spiritual watch out?**

Those who are spiritual must watch out that they are not also tempted.

**Galatians 6:2**

**How do believers fulfill the law of Christ?**

Believers fulfill the law of Christ by carrying one another's burdens.

**Galatians 6:4**

**How can a person have something in himself to be proud of regarding his work?**

A person can have something in himself to be proud of by examining his own work, without comparing himself to anyone else.

**Galatians 6:6**

**What must one who is taught the word do with his teacher?**

One who is taught the word must share all good things with his teacher.

**Galatians 6:7**

**What happens to whatever a man spiritually plants?**  
Whatever a man spiritually plants he will harvest.

**Galatians 6:8**

**What does a man harvest who plants to his own flesh?**  
A man who plants to his own flesh harvests corruption out of his flesh.

**What does a man harvest who plants to the Spirit?**  
A man who plants to the Spirit harvests out of the Spirit eternal life.

**Galatians 6:9**

**If a believer does not give up and continues doing good, what will he receive?**  
A believer who continues doing good will reap a harvest.

**Galatians 6:10**

**To whom should believers especially do good?**  
Believers should especially do good to those of the household of faith.

**Galatians 6:12**

**What is the motivation of those who want to compel the believers to be circumcised?**  
Those who want to compel the believers to be circumcised do not want to be persecuted for the cross of Christ.

**Galatians 6:14**

**Of what did Paul say he was proud?**  
Paul said that he was proud of the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ.

**Galatians 6:15**

**Instead of circumcision or uncircumcision, what is important?**  
What is important is a new creation.

**Galatians 6:16**

**Upon whom does Paul wish peace and mercy?**  
Paul wishes peace and mercy upon those who live by the rule of the new creation, and upon the Israel of God.

**Galatians 6:17**

**What did Paul carry on his body?**  
Paul carried the marks of Jesus on his body.

## Abraham

### Related Words:

Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldeans](#), [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

## Antioch

### Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

- The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called "Christians." The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
- The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn't have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
- Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Colossae](#), [John Mark](#), [Paul](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 11:26

- Galatians 02:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G491

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Antioch

**Arabia**

**Related Words:**

Arab, Arabian

**Facts:**

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term "Arabian" is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham's son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(See also: [Esau](#), [Galatia](#), [Ishmael](#), [Shem](#), [Sinai](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- Acts 02:11
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 02:19-20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Arab, Arabia, Arabian, Arabians

**Barnabas**

**Facts:**

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(See also: [Christian](#), [Cyprus](#), [good news](#), [Levi](#), [Paul](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:36
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 13:03
- Acts 15:33
- Colossians 04:10-11
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Galatians 02:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G921

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Barnabas, Barnabas'

**Christ****Related Ideas:**

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

**Facts:**

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35

- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

**Cilicia**

**Facts:**

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

- The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
- Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
- Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(See also: [Paul](#), [Stephen](#), [Tarsus](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 27:3-6
- Galatians 01:21-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2791

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Cilicia

**Damascus**

**Facts:**

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(See also: [Aram](#), [Assyria](#), [believe](#), [Syria](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 09:03
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1834, G1154

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Damascus

**Eve****Facts:**

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](#), [life](#), [Satan](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 02:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:03
- Genesis 03:20
- Genesis 04:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2332, G2096

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Eve, Eve's

**Galatia****Related Words:**

Galatian

**Facts:**

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."



## Gentile

- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(See also: [Asia](#), [believe](#), [Cilicia](#), [good news](#), [Paul](#), [work](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Acts 16:6-8
- Galatians 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1053, G1054

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Galatia, Galatians

## Gentile

### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gentile, Gentiles

## God

### Related Ideas:

the living God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

God, God's, the living God

**God the Father****Related Ideas:**

Father, heavenly Father, my Father

**Facts:**

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world, and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it refers to God.

(See also: [father](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Father, God the Father, heavenly Father, my Father

**Greek****Related Words:**

Grecian

**Facts:**

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](#), [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

**Hagar**

**Facts:**

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [Ishmael](#), [Sarah](#), [servant](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:09
- Genesis 25:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1904

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Hagar

## Isaac

### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaac, Isaac's

## Israel

### Related Ideas:

Israelite

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

## Jerusalem

**Facts:**

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

## Jesus

### Related Ideas:

the Lord Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
- Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

## Jew

### Related Ideas:

Jewish, person of Judah

**Facts:**

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Jewish authorities](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jew, Jewish, Jews, Jews', a person of Judah, the language of Judah, the people of Judah

## **Judaism**

**Definition:**

The term "Judaism" refers to the religion practiced by the Jews.

- The word "Judaism" only appears in the New Testament, since the term did not exist before that time.
- Judaism includes all the Old Testament laws and instructions that God gave to the Israelites to obey. It also includes the customs and traditions that have been added to the Jewish religion over time.
- When translating, the term "Jewish religion" or "religion of the Jews" can be used in both the Old and New Testaments.
- When translating the word "Judaism", the term "Jewish religion" or "religion of the Jews" can be used.

(See also: [Jew](#), [law of Moses](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 01:13
- Galatians 01:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2454

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Judaism



## Judea

### Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Edom](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judea

## Paul

### Related Words

Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(See also: [Christian](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 08:03
- Acts 09:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 01:01
- Philemon 01:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3972, G4569

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Paul, Saul, Paul's

**Peter**

**Related Words:**

Cephas, Simon

**Facts:**

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 03:16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613, G4826

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas, Simon son of Jonah, Simon, Simon's

## Sinai

### Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: [desert](#), [Egypt](#), [Horeb](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5514, G3735, G4614

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sinai, Mount Sinai

## Son of God

### Related Ideas:

the Son

### Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- Unlike anyone else, God the Father, the Son of God, and the Holy Spirit are all one God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all fully and equally God.
- The Son of God has the same character as God the Father.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(See also: [Christ](#), [father](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10

- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Son of God, the Son

**Syria**

**Facts:**

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(See also: [Aram](#), [commander](#), [Damascus](#), [descendant](#), [Elisha](#), [leper](#), [Naaman](#), [persecute](#), [prophet](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 15:23
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 20:03
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Matthew 04:23-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H758, G4947, G4948

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Syria, Syrian

**Titus**

**Facts:**

Titus was a Gentile. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

- A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
- In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
- In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(See also: [appoint](#), [believe](#), [church](#), [circumcise](#), [Crete](#), [elder](#), [courage](#), [instruct](#), [minister](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:10
- Galatians 02:1-2
- Galatians 02:3-5
- Titus 01:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G5103

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Titus, Titus'

**adopt**

**Related Ideas:**

adoption

**Definition:**

The terms "adopt" and "adoption" refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses "adoption" and "adopt" in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase "experience adoption as sons" could be translated as "be adopted by God as his children" or "become God's (spiritual) children."
- To "wait for the adoption of sons" could be translated as "look forward to becoming God's children" or "wait expectantly for God to receive as children."
- The phrase "adopt them" could be translated as "receive them as his own children" or "make them his own (spiritual) children."

(See also: [heir](#), [inherit](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ephesians 01:5
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Romans 08:14-15
- Romans 08:23
- Romans 09:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G5206

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

adopt, adopted, adoption

**age****Related Ideas:**

aged, from ancient times, old age

**Definition:**

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
- Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
- The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
- The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
- The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

**amazed****Related Ideas:**

amazement, appalled, astonished, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marvelous, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful

**Definition:**

Some of these terms mean to be very surprised because of something very unusual that happened. Many of these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened. Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.

- The words "amazed," "astonished," and "astounded" describe someone who is very surprised because of something very unusual that happened.
- The word "appalled" describes someone who is amazed or horrified by something that is bad or evil.
- The word "perplexed" describes someone who is to be amazed and troubled, not knowing what to think or how to act.
- People "marvel" and "wonder" when they are surprised by something very unusual.
- "Amazement" and "wonder" are what people feel when they are amazed.

Some of these terms describe things that are very unusual and surprise people. \* The words "amazing", "astonishing", "marvelous", "remarkable," and "wonderful" describe things that are very unusual and surprise people. \* The word "appalling" describes something that is very bad and causes people to be amazed or horrified. \* The word "incomprehensible" describes something that is so great that people cannot ever understand it. \* A "wonder" is an extraordinary and surprising thing that happens.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H943, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8047, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1411, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amazed, amazement, amazing events, amazing things, appalled, appalling, astonish, astonished, astonishing, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, marvelous things, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful, wondering, wonders

## angel

### Related Ideas:

archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

angel, angels, archangel

### anger

### Related Ideas:

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

### Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
- A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
- To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:26
- Exodus 32:11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:14
- Matthew 26:08



- Psalms 018:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

**apostle**

**Related Ideas:**

apostleship

**Definition:**

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
- It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

apostle, apostles, apostles', apostleship

**ark**

**Related Ideas:**

chest

**Definition:**

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
- In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [basket](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 03:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:06
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ark, chest

**astray****Related Ideas:**

draw away, make a mistake, mislead, mistaken, wander

**Definition:**

The terms "stray" and "go astray" mean to disobey God's will. People who are "led astray" have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word "astray" gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have "strayed." God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and "gone astray."
- To "draw away" someone or "mislead" someone is to lead him astray.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase "go astray" could be translated as "go away from God" or "take a wrong path away from God's will" or "stop obeying God" or "live in a way that goes away from God."
- To "lead someone astray" could be translated as "cause someone to disobey God" or "influence someone to stop obeying God" or "cause someone to follow you down a wrong path."

(See also: [disobey](#), [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5074, H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G1294, G4105, G5351

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

astray, drawn away, go astray, goes astray, gone astray, lead ... astray, leads ... astray, led ... astray, made ... mistake, mislead, misleading, misleads, misled, mistaken, stray, strayed, straying, strays, wander, went astray

**baptize****Related Ideas:**

baptism

**Definition:**

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
- The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
- The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
- When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G907

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

baptism, baptize, baptized, baptizing

**barren**

**Related Ideas:**

dried, faded, salt land, withered

**Definition:**

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."
- "Salt land" is barren because nothing can grow in salty soil.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 02:5
- Galatians 04:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 03:07

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H535, H1565, H2717, H3001, H4420, H5034, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G692, G4723

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

barren, dried, dry, fade, fades, fading, salt land, wither, withered, withers

**bear**

**Related Ideas:**

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

**Definitions:**

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
- To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
- A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
- The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."

- The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Lamentations 03:27

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

### **bear**

#### **Definition:**

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#), [Elisha](#))

#### **Bible References:**

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1677, G715

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bear, bears

### **beg**

#### **Related Ideas:**

ask, beggar, needy

#### **Definition:**

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

### **believe**

#### **Related Ideas:**

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

#### **Definition:**

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

- believe
  - To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
  - To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
  - To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
- believe in
  - To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
  - When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
  - The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
  - To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

\* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right." \* To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

\* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ." \* This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him." \* Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus." \* The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever": \* Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing." \* The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

## **bless**

### **Related Ideas:**

happier, happy

### **Definition:**

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

## blood

### Related Ideas:

bleeding

### Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."



- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bleeding, blood

#### **boast**

#### **Related Ideas:**

boastful

#### **Definition:**

The term "boast" means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is "boastful" talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for "boasting in" their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead "boast" or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate "boast" could include "brag" or "talk proudly" or "be proud."
- The term "boastful" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "full of prideful talk" or "prideful" or "talking proudly about oneself."
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as "take pride in" or "exalt in" or "be very glad about" or "give thanks to God about."
- Some languages have two words for "pride": one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one's work, family, or country.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

(See also: [proud](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- James 03:14
- James 04:15-17
- Psalms 044:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1461, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

boast, boasted, boastful, boasting, boasts, reason for boasting

**body****Related Ideas:**

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

**Definition:**

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
- When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

**brother**

**Related Ideas:**

brotherhood

**Definition:**

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

**burden****Related Ideas:**

burdensome, heavy, load

**Definition:**

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God," usually an important or unpleasant one, that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H4931, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, H6231, G4, G916, G922, G1912, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

burden, burdened, burdens, burdensome, heavy, load, loaded, loaded up, loads

**call****Related Ideas:**

appeal to, invite, summon

**Definition:**

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.

- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
- To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
- To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

### captive

### Related Ideas:

captivate, captivity, captor, capture, catch

### Definition:

The terms "captive" and "captivity" refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to "take captive" is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, "carry you away captive" could also be translated as, "force you to live as captives" or "take you away to another country as prisoners."
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to "take captive" every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be "taken captive" by sin, which means he is "controlled by" sin.
- A "captor" is a person who captures another person or takes him captive.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be "held captive" could also be translated by, "not allowed to be free" or "kept in prison" or "forced to live in a foreign country."
- The expression, "led captive" or "taken captive" could be translated as, "captured" or "imprisoned" or "forced to go to a foreign land."
- The term "captives" could also be translated as, "people who were captured" or "enslaved people."
- Depending on the context, "captivity" could also be translated as, "imprisonment" or "exile" or "forced stay in a foreign country."

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), [prison](#), [seize](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H631, H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H3920, H3947, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221, G4084

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

captivate, captivated, captive, captives, captivity, captor, captors, capture, captured, captures, carried away captive, catch, caught, held captive, taken ... captive

## children

### Related Ideas:

child, childhood, childless

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. \* The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child. \* The word "childless" describes a person who has no children. \* The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.

- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

child, childhood, childless, children

## **church**

#### **Definition:**

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term "the Church" often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a "called out" assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter ("Church") to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
- In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation.

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

church, churches

### circumcise

### Related Ideas:

circumcision, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.



- The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."
- The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."
- The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: [Abraham](#), [covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### clothed

### Related Ideas:

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

**Definition:**

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
- All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
- The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

**Bible References:**

- Luke 24:49

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

**condemn****Related Ideas:**

condemnation, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

**Definition:**

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- To "denounce" someone is to say that he is guilty of great evil.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone. The word "judgment" means the same as "condemnation."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as "judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H6600, H7561, H8199, H8381, G843, G1349, H1882, G1935, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

condemn, condemnation, condemned, condemning, condemns, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

## confidence

## Related Ideas:

assure, carefree, confident, convinced, fully assured, without fear

## Definition:

The term "confidence" refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as "confidence" or "confidence for the future" or "future confidence" especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term "confidence" refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, "have confidence in God" means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being "confident" means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "confident" could be translated as "assured" or "very sure."
- The phrase "be confident" could also be translated as "trust completely" or "be completely sure about" or "know for certain."
- The term "confidently" could also be translated as "boldly" or "with certainty."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confidence" could include, "complete assurance" or "sure expectation" or "certainty."

(See also: [believe](#), [believe](#), [bold](#), [faithful](#), [hope](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

{{topic>confidence&nocomments}}

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, H7961, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G4135, G5287

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

assure, carefree, confidence, confident, confidently, convinced, fully assured, source of ... confidence, without fear

**consume****Related Ideas:**

swallow

**Definition:**

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

**Translation Suggestions**

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
- When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
- The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as, "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
- When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
- If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
- The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as, "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H1086, H1104, H1105, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H5595, H7462, H8046, H8552, G355, G2068, G2618, G2654, G2666, G2719, G5315

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

consume, consumed, consumes, consuming, swallow, swallowed, swallows

**covenant****Related Ideas:**

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

**Definition:**

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

**CROSS****Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4716

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cross

**cry****Related Ideas:**

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

**Definition:**

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.

- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

#### **curse**

#### **Related Ideas:**

accursed, speak evil

#### **Definition:**

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14

- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

**cut off**

**Related Ideas:**

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

**Definition:**

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

**Picture of Cut Off From People:**

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
- Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

**day**

**Related Ideas:**

daily, daytime, morning, today

**Definition:**

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](#), [last day](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

**deceive**

**Related Ideas:**

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

**Definition:**

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

- The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
- A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.

- The words “deceitful” and “deceptive” can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
- To “entice” someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
- To “defraud” someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
- To “flatter” someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
- To “lie” to someone or to tell a “lie” is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “deceive” could be translated as “lie to,” “mislead,” “trick,” or “fool.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

## deliver

### Related Ideas:

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.

- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

## descendant

### Related Ideas:

descend, posterity

### Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."
- A person's "posterity" is all of his descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [father](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1247, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6631, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G3624, G4690

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

clans descended, descend, descendant, descendants, descended, posterity

**desolate**

**Related Ideas:**

alone, deserted, desolation, desolations, isolated, left alone, left without, lonely

**Definition:**

The terms "desolate" and "desolation" refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term "desolate" describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- A widow is desolate because she has no man to provide for her and therefore often lacks food, shelter, and clothing.
- The term "desolation" is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A "desolate region" refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."
- A person who is "lonely" is alone. He has no friends or family or other people with whom he can enjoy being.
- The term "deserted" describes a place that everyone has left.

(See also: [desert](#), [devastated](#), [ruin](#), [waste](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5221, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7604, H7673, H7701, H7722, H7909, H7921, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2047, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

alone, deserted, deserted place, deserted places, desolate, desolation, desolations, isolated, left ... alone, left ... without, lonely, made ... desolate, making ... desolate, uninhabited

## destroy

### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
- The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

## devour

### Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

devour, devoured, devouring, devours

**drunk**

**Related Ideas:**

intoxicated, drink much, drunkard, drunkenness

**Definitions:**

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: [wine](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7686, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

be ... intoxicated, became drunk, become drunk, drank freely, drink much, drunk, drunkard, drunkards, drunkenness, get drunk

## enslave

### Related Ideas:

bondage, bring into slavery, slave, slavery

### Definition:

To "enslave" someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be "enslaved" or "in bondage" means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To "enslave" also means to take away a person's freedom.
- Another word for "bondage" is "slavery."
- In a figurative way, human beings are "enslaved" to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "enslave" could be translated as "cause to not be free" or "force to serve others" or "put under the control of others."
- The phrase "enslaved to" or "in bondage to" could be translated as "forced to be a slave of" or "forced to serve" or "under the control of."

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:03
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Genesis 15:13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H519, H4522, H5647, H5650, H5659, H8198, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G3814

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

being slaves, bondage, bring ... into slavery, enslave, enslaved, enslaves, female slave, female slaves, male slaves, slave, slave girl, slave girls, slaved, slavery, slaves

## envy

### Related Ideas:

covet, covetousness, envious, greed

### Definition:

The term "envy" refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
- To "covet" means to have a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse. Often a person who covets something is willing to sin to get it.
- "Greed" is a strong, selfish desire to have something. Often a person who is greedy wants more of what he already has.

(See also: [jealous](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H183, H2530, H7065, H7068, H7342, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

covet, coveted, coveting, covetousness, envied, envious, envy, envying, greed, greedy

**evil**

**Related Ideas:**

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

**Definition:**

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

**face****Related Ideas:**

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

**Definition:**

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

## **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

## **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

## **faith**

## **Definition:**

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

## **Translation Suggestions:**

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

## **Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

## **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

faith

## father

### Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

### Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. \* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father. \* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather. \* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor. \* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father. \* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan. \* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

- The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
- The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

### favor

#### Related Ideas:

favorable, favoritism, privilege, request for favor, show favor

#### Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
- A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit" or "credit."
- The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
- The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

#### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2604, H2617, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965, H8467, G1184, G3685, G3982, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

favor, favorable, favored, favoritism, favors, privilege, request for favor, seek ... favor, seeking the favor, show favor, shown favor, sought ... favor

### fellowship

#### Related Ideas:

alliance, associate with, association, allied with, contribution, participants with, partnership, share, united

**Definition:**

In general, the term "fellowship" refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term "fellowship" usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God's Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.
- An "alliance" is a kind of fellowship between governments in which the governments agree to work together, usually to fight common enemies.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "fellowship" could include "a sharing together" or "relationship" or "companionship" or "Christian community."

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- Philippians 01:3-6
- Philippians 02:01
- Philippians 03:10
- Psalms 055:12-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2266, H2270, H4541, H6148, H8641, G2842, G2844, G3352, G3353, G4790

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

alliance, alliances, associate with, association, be allied with, be participants with, contribution, contributions, fellowship, participant, participants, partnership, share, sharers, shares, sharing, united

**fir****Definition:**

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

- Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
- In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
- Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 27:4-5
- Isaiah 37:24-25
- Isaiah 41:19-20
- Isaiah 44:14
- Isaiah 60:12-13
- Psalms 104:16-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fir, firs

**flesh****Related Ideas:**

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

**fool****Related Ideas:**

folly, foolish, foolishly, foolishness, insane, insanity, out of his mind, senseless, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

**Definition:**

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.
- A person who is "insane" or suffering from "insanity" is unable to know truth from error, right from wrong, or good from evil and often acts without knowing what he is doing.
- Something that is hollow has nothing on its inside.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
- Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: [wise](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1197, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912, G3913

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

act of disgraceful folly, acted ... foolishly, disgraceful folly, folly, fool, foolish, foolishness, fools, insane, insanity, out of ... mind, senseless, spoken ... foolishly, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

## found

### Related Ideas:

establish, foundation, founder

### Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
- To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
- The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
- Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

## free

### Related Ideas:

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it



**Definition:**

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
- To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

**fruit****Related Ideas:**

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

**Definition:**

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. \* A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit. \* The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains. \* The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for food. \* The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively. \* In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise. \* The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children. \* The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions

reveal what his character is like. \* The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him. \* The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a woman gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

### fulfill

### Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

### Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

## gate

### Related Ideas:

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

- A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
- A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01

- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

**glory**

**Related Ideas:**

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

**Definition:**

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

## **Bible References:**

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

## **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

## **god**

## **Related Ideas:**

disgusting figure, false god, goat idols, goddess, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

## **Definition:**

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

## **Translation Suggestions:**

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.

- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [demon](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1140, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

disgusting figure, disgusting figures, false god, goat idols, god, goddess, gods, idol, idol's, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry, idols, idols'

### **good**

#### **Related Ideas:**

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

#### **Definition:**

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
- Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
- "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
- To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

## good news

### Related Ideas:

gospel

### Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."
- The writers of the New Testament use a verb based on this noun to talk about telling or proclaiming good news or preaching the gospel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news about" or "good message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1319, G2097, G2098, G4283

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

announce good news, announced the good news, announcing ... the good news, being told good news, bring ... good news, brings ... good news, brought ... good news, good news, gospel, gospel's, had ... good news proclaimed, preach the gospel, preached the gospel beforehand, preaching ... the gospel, proclaim ... gospel, proclaimed the good news, proclaimed the gospel, proclaiming ... good news, proclaiming the gospel, telling ... good news, were told the good news

**grace**

**Related Ideas:**

generous, gracious, graciously

**Definition:**

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16



- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

**hand**

**Related Ideas:**

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

**Definition:**

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
  - To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
  - To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

**Translation Suggestions**

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

**hang**

**Definition:**

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

**harvest**

**Related Ideas:**

harvester

**Definition:**

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruit](#), [festival](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

**heart****Related Ideas:**

kidneys

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
- The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

## Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

## heaven

## Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

## Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

## Translation Suggestions:

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."

- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

### **heir**

#### **Definition:**

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

## hope

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
- The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
- To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
- The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
- The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
- Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated a, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H1891, H2976, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G1679, G1680, G2070, G4276

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

hope, hoped, hopes, look to ... in hope, uselessly hope

## house

### Related Ideas:

home, residence

**Definition:**

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
- "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

**household****Related Ideas:**

household members

**Definition:**

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624, G3626

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

household, household members, households, members of household

**in Christ**

**Related Ideas:**

in Christ Jesus, in Jesus, in the Lord, in the Lord Jesus, into Christ

**Definition:**

The phrase "in Christ" and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include "in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ."
- Possible meanings for the term "in Christ" could include "because you belong to Christ" or "through the relationship you have with Christ" or "based on your faith in Christ."
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word "in" belongs with the verb. For example, "share in Christ" means to "share in" the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To "glory in" Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To "believe in" Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "in Christ" and "in the Lord" (and related phrases) could include:
  - "who belong to Christ"
  - "because you believe in Christ"
  - "because Christ has saved us"
  - "in service to the Lord"
  - "relying on the Lord"
- "because of what the Lord has done."
- People who "believe in" Christ or who "have faith in" Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like "believe in" or "share in" or "trust in."

(See also: [Christ](#), [lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))



**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:05
- 2 Corinthians 02:17
- 2 Timothy 01:01
- Galatians 01:22
- Galatians 02:17
- Philemon 01:06
- Revelation 01:10
- Romans 09:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2962, G5547

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

in Christ, in Christ Jesus, in Jesus, in him, in the Lord, in the Lord Jesus, into Christ

**inherit****Related Ideas:**

heritage, inheritance, legacy

**Definition:**

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."
- To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."

## interpret

- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

## interpret

### Related Ideas:

interpretation, interpreter, translate

### Definitions:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term "interpret" can refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as seeing what the sky looks like and figuring out whether or not it will rain or be windy.
- The terms "interpret" and "translate" can refer to explaining what is said in one language to people who speak another language.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "interpret" include "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
- The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [dream](#), [prophet](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5

- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:56

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

interpret, interpretation, interpretations, interpreted, interpreter, interpreting, interprets, translated

**is written**

**Definition:**

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
- Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law of Moses](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H874, H3789, G1125

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

are ... written, had ... been written, has ... been written, have ... been written, is ... written, is it ... written, it is written, it was written, Moses ... wrote, was written, were ... written

**jealous**

**Related Ideas:**

jealousy

**Definition:**

The terms "jealous" and "jealousy" refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God's strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.

- God is also "jealous" for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word "envious."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "jealous" could include "strong protective desire" or "possessive desire."
- The term "jealousy" could be translated as "strong protective feeling" or "possessive feeling."
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people's wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms "envious" and "envy" could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 05:09
- Exodus 20:05
- Ezekiel 36:05
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G2206, G3863

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

jealous, jealousy

## joy

### Related Ideas:

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
- To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
- "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

**Bible References:**

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

**kin****Related Ideas:**

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

**Definition:**

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

- "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
- This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

**Bible References:**

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

**kind****Definition:**

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

**Picture showing Kinds:****Translation Suggestions**

- Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kind, kinds

**king****Related Ideas:**

kingly, kingship

**Definition:**

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
- Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

**kingdom****Related Ideas:**

power to rule

**Definition:**

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

## kingdom of God

### Related Ideas:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly.
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."



- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

#### **know**

#### **Related Ideas:**

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

#### **Definition:**

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
- If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."

- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
- To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

### **labor**

#### **Related Ideas:**

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

#### **Definition:**

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
- "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
- An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
- Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](#), [labor pains](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

**law****Related Ideas:**

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

**Definition:**

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
- A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
- Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
- A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

**letter****Related Ideas:**

epistle

### Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include "written message" or "written down words" or "writing."

(See also: [courage](#), [exhort](#), [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:27
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G1121, G1992

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

epistle, letter, letters

## life

### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

#### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
- To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
- A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
- The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
- Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
- The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

## 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](#), [eternity](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

## like

### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.

- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
- The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
- The word "unlike" means "not like."

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

### love

### Related Ideas:

brotherly love

**Definition:**

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
8. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09

- Song of Solomon 01:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

**lute**

**Definition:**

A lute is a small, stringed, musical instrument that the Israelites used when they worshiped God.

- A lute is very similar to a modern-day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5035, H5443

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lute, lutes

**manager**

**Related Ideas:**

engage, manage, management, steward, stewardship

**Definition:**

The term "manager" or "steward" in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master's property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term "manager" is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.
- The terms "management" and "stewardship" refer to the work that a manager or steward does.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This could also be translated as "supervisor" or "household organizer" or "servant who manages" or "person who organizes."



(See also: [servant](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 08:03
- Luke 16:02
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 01:07

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4453, H6485, G2012, G3616, G3621, G3622, G3623, G4291

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

engage, manage, management, manager, managers, steward, stewards, stewardship

**member**

**Definition:**

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), [Pharisee](#), [council](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

member, members

**mercy**

**Related Ideas:**

kindness, merciful, spare

**Definition:**

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
- An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

**minister****Related Ideas:**

attend to someone's needs, care for, mission, offer as a priest, perform the service, provide for others' needs, tend

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "ministry" refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would "minister" to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.

- Their "ministry" also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of "ministering" to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of ministering to people, to "minister" could also be translated as to "serve" or to "care for" or to "meet the needs of."
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term "minister" could be translated as "serve God in the temple" or "offer sacrifices to God for the people."
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as "serve," "perform the service," or "work for God."
- The phrase "ministered to" could also be translated as "took care of" or "provided for" or "helped."

(See also: [servant](#), [sacrifice](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2729, H6485, H7462, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2418, G2999, G3008, G3009, G5256

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

attend to ... needs, attending to ... needs, care for, carrying out, minister, ministers, ministries, ministry, mission, offer as a priest, perform ... service, performed ... service, provided for ... needs, tending, to minister

### **miracle**

#### **Related Ideas:**

miraculous

#### **Definition:**

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
- The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4159, H6381, H6382, G1411, G1605, G4592, G5059

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

miracle, miracles, miraculous

**mock****Related Ideas:**

defy, laughingstock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, taunt

**Definition:**

The terms "mock," "ridicule," "scoff at," and "taunt" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.
- A person who "defies" another mockingly challenges that other person to do something the mocker believes the other person cannot do.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19

- Matthew 27:29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4426, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8437, H8591, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defied, defy, laugh in mockery, laughingstock, mock, mocked, mocker, mockers, mockery, mocking, mocks, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at, scoffing, taunted, taunting song, taunts

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

nation, nations

**neighbor**

**Related Ideas:**

neighborhood, neighboring

**Definition:**

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
- A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
- "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

**new moon**

**Definition:**

The term "new moon" refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram's horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the "beginning of the month."

(See also: [month](#), [earth](#), [festival](#), [horn](#), [sheep](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2320, G3376, G3561

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

new moon, new moons

**obey**

**Related Ideas:**

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

**Definition:**

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
- To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
- Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

**ordain****Related Ideas:**

ordination

**Definition:**

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term "ordain" often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to "ordain" could be translated as to "assign" or to "appoint" or to "command" or to "make a rule" or to "institute."

(See also: [command](#), [covenant](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [priest](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 03:03
- Psalms 111:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G2525, G4270, G4282, H6822

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ordain, ordained, ordination

**partial****Related Ideas:**

partiality

**Definition:**

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are richer or more popular than other people.
- God instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.



- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to treat rich people better than poor people.

(See also: [favor](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5234, H5375, H6440, G991, G2983, G4299, G4381, G4382, G4383

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

be partial, partial, partiality, show partiality

**peace**

**Related Ideas:**

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

**Definition:**

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
- A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
- To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

**perfect**

**Related Ideas:**

perfecter, perfection, perfectly

**Definition:**

The term "perfect" describes something that has no flaw. To "perfect" something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Only God and what he does is absolutely perfect.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they become perfect and mature because they become more like Christ in their character.
- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient; it does not mean that he is sinless.
- The term "perfect" also has the meaning of being "complete" or "whole."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "perfect" could be translated as "without flaw" or "without error" or "flawless" or "without fault" or "not having any faults."
- The term "perfectly" could be translated "completely" or "fully."

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3615, H3632, H3634, H4359, H4390, H8003, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G2005, G2038, G2675, G2676, G3647, G4135, G4137, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5055

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly

**persecute**

**Related Ideas:**

persecution, persecutor

**Definition:**

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.

- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment."

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), [oppress](#), [Rome](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors

### **pillar**

#### **Related Ideas:**

column

#### **Definition:**

The term "pillar" usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for "pillar" is "column."

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word "pillar" sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a "carved image" and could be translated as "statue."
- The term "pillar" is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the "pillar of fire" that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the "pillar of salt" that Lot's wife became after she looked back at the city.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As a structure supporting a building, the term "pillar" or "column" could be translated as "upright stone support beam" or "supporting stone structure."
- Other uses of "pillar" could be translated as "statue" or "pile" or "mound" or "monument" or "tall mass," depending on the context.

(See also: [found](#), [god](#), [image](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 18:04
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:09
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 09:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H352, H547, H2106, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

column, columns, pillar, pillars

**power****Related Ideas:**

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

**Definition:**

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
- An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21

- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

**preach**

**Related Ideas:**

preacher

**Definition:**

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G312, G518, G1344, G2097, G2511, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3870, G4283

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

preach, preached, preacher, preaching

**prison****Related Ideas:**

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

**Definition:**

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

- The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
- The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.
- To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
- A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Another word for "prison" is "jail."
- The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

**promise****Related Ideas:**

binding promise

**Definition:**

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

**raise****Related Ideas:**

arise, rise, risen

**Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"

- A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

### reap

### Related Ideas:

reaper

### Definition:

The term "reap" means to harvest crops such as grain. A "reaper" is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God's family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person's actions, as in the saying "a man reaps what he plants."
- Other ways to translate to "reap" and "reaper" could include to "harvest" and "harvester" (or "person who harvests").

(See also: [good news](#), [harvest](#))



**Bible References:**

- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4672, H7114, H7938, G2325, G2327

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

reap, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping, reaps

**receive**

**Related Ideas:**

abstain, receiver

**Definition:**

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
- The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

**redeem**

**Related Ideas:**

redeemer, redemption

**Definition:**

To "redeem" and "redemption" refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. "Redemption" is the action of doing that. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
- The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "the buying back."
- The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: [free](#), [ransom](#))

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6306, H6304, H7069, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

redeem, redeemed, redeemer, redeems, redemption

## reed

### Definitions:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reed, reeds

## reject

### Related Ideas:

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

### Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

- To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
- To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
- To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
- An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), [stiff-necked](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14

- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

**rest**

**Related Ideas:**

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

**Definition:**

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
- To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
- To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
- "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
- If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as "I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

### restore

### Related Ideas:

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

### Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
- A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
- A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

## return

### Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

- To "return to" a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
- When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
- To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

## reveal

### Related Ideas:

revelation

### Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book "Revelation," God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
- The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: [dream](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12

- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1540, H1541, H1540, H5046, H7200, G601, G602, G1213, G1453, G3377, G5318, G5319, G5537

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

reveal, revealed, revealing, reveals, revelation, revelations

**right hand**

**Related Ideas:**

righthand side

**Definition:**

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
- To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
- Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
- The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power."
- The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33

- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, G1188

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

right hand, right hands, righthand side

**righteous**

**Related Ideas:**

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

**Definition:**

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
- "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good"
- Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."



- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [justice](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [sin](#), [lawful](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

#### **run**

#### **Related Ideas:**

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

**Definition:**

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

- To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
- To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
- To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.
- "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

- Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
- The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country's border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
- Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
- The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [god](#), [persevere](#), [refuge](#), [turn](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

**seed****Related Words:**

semen

**Definition:**

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G2848, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

seed, seeds, semen

**seek****Related Ideas:**

go to find, look out for, search, try

**Definition:**

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
- To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

- To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [justice](#), [true](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

**self-control**

**Related Ideas:**

self-indulgence, sensible, use good sense

**Definition:**

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.
- "Self-indulgence" is the opposite of self-control. Someone who is full of self-indulgence does whatever he wants.

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
- 2 Peter 01:5-7
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- Galatians 05:23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4623, H7307, G192, G193, G1466, G1467, G1468, G4993, G4997, G4998

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

self-control, self-controlled, self-indulgence, sensible, use good sense

## **servant**

### **Related Ideas:**

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

### **Definition:**

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#))

### **Bible References**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

### **sexual immorality**

#### **Related Ideas:**

fornicate, fornication, immoral

#### **Definition:**

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
- The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [faithful](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fornicate, fornicates, fornication, fornications, immoral, immorality, sexual immorality

**sin****Related Ideas:**

sinful, sinner

**Definition:**

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebellious against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11

- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
- Romans 08:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [father](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05



- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

son, son's, sons

**sons of God**

**Related Ideas:**

children of God

**Definition:**

The term "sons of God" is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term "sons of God" refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God" since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term "sons of God" that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title "Son of God" is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God's only Son.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When "sons of God" refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as "children of God."
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate "sons of God" could include "angels," "spirit beings," "supernatural creatures," or "demons."
- Also see the link for "son."

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [ruler](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 06:02
- Genesis 06:4
- Job 01:06
- Romans 08:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1121, G5207, G5043

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

children of God, sons of ... God

## sorcery

### Related Ideas:

sorcerer, sorceress, witchcraft

### Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is a man who does these powerful, magical things. A "sorceress" is a woman who does these things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#), [demon](#), [divination](#), [god](#), [magic](#), [sacrifice](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Exodus 07:11-13
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Revelation 09:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G5331, G5332, G5333

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorceries, sorcery, witchcraft

## spirit

### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.

- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#), [divination](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

### **strife**

#### **Related Ideas:**

argue, argument, conflict, contention, dispute, quarrel

#### **Definition:**

The term "strife" refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word "strife" implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate "strife" could include "argument" or "contention" or "disagreement" or "dispute" or "conflict."

(See also: [anger](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 03:3-5
- Habakkuk 01:03
- Philippians 01:17
- Proverbs 17:01
- Psalms 055:8-9
- Romans 13:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H6635, H7379, H7701, G485, G1252, G2052, G3055, G3163, G3164, G5379

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

arguing, argument, conflict, conflicts, contention, dispute, disputes, quarrel, quarreling, quarrels, strife

**stumbling block**

**Related Ideas:**

occasion for stumbling, stone of stumbling

**Definition:**

The term "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as "stone that causes stumbling" or "something that causes someone to not believe" or "obstacle that causes doubt" or "obstacle to faith" or "something that causes someone to sin."

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 01:23
- Galatians 05:11
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 09:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4383, H6697, G3037, G4349, G4625

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

occasion for stumbling, stone of stumbling, stumbling block, stumbling blocks

## subject

### Related Ideas:

force to become slaves, subdue, subject, subjection

### Definitions:

A person is the "subject" of another person if the second person rules over the first. To "be subject to" is to "obey" or to "submit to the authority of."

- The phrase "put in subjection to" refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To "subject someone to something" means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term "subject" is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, "you will be the subject of ridicule."
- The phrase "be subject to" means the same as "be submissive to" or "submit to."

(See also: [submit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:14-16
- 1 Kings 04:06
- 1 Peter 02:18-20
- Hebrews 02:05
- Proverbs 12:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, H8214, G350, G1396, G1777, G4029, G5293

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are subjected, be subject to, be subjected, forced to become slaves, in subjection to, not subjected, subdue, subdued, subject, subject to, subjected, subjection, subjects, was subjected, were subjected

## suffer

### Related Ideas:

misery

### Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."

- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

#### **teach**

#### **Related Ideas:**

educated, teaching, untaught

#### **Definition:**

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

- A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
- Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
- A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
- A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
- A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

**tempt****Related Ideas:**

temptation, tempter

**Definition:**

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

**test****Related Ideas:**

put to the test

**Definition:**

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

**time****Definitions:**

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.



- "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
- To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

time, times

#### **tradition**

#### **Definition:**

The term "tradition" refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word "traditions" referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God's laws. The expression "tradition of men" or "human tradition" makes this clear.
- Phrases such as "traditions of the elders" or "traditions of my fathers" referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term "tradition" in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#), [father](#), [generation](#), [Jew](#), [law of Moses](#), [Moses](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Colossians 02:08
- Galatians 01:13-14
- Mark 07:02
- Matthew 15:03

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3862

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tradition, traditions

**transgress****Related Ideas:**

offend, offense, transgression, transgressor

**Definition:**

The term "transgression" refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To "transgress" is to commit a "transgression."

- Figuratively, to "transgress" can also be described as to "cross a line," that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms "transgression," "sin," "iniquity," and "trespass" all include the meaning of acting against God's will and disobeying his commands.
- To "offend" someone is to anger him by transgressing against him. He will then be "offended."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To "transgress" could be translated as to "sin" or to "disobey" or to "rebel."
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean "sin" or "transgress" or "trespass," it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See also: [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H6087, H6586, H6588, G3847, G3848, G3892

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

offend, offended, offense, offenses, transgress, transgressed, transgresses, transgressing, transgression, transgressions, transgressor, transgressors

**trespass****Definition:**

To "trespass" means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person. A "trespass" is the action of "trespassing."

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms "sin," and "transgress," especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
- Some languages may have an expression like "cross the line" that could be used to translate "trespass."
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as "transgress" and "sin."

(See also: [disobey](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [transgress](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H819, H4604, H6588, G264, G3900

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

trespass, trespassed, trespasses

**trouble****Related Ideas:**

troublesome

**Definition:**

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or "when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

**trust**

**Related Ideas:**

entrust, trustworthiness, trustworthy

**Definition:**

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.
- For one person to "entrust" something to a second person is for the first person to give that thing to the second person and expect that the second person will do what the first person tells him to do.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
- The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
- The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: [believe](#), [confidence](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H530, H539, H540, H571, H982, H1556, H2620, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3860, G3982, G4100, G4103

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

entrust, entrusted, entrusting, trust, trusted, trusting, trusts, trustworthiness, trustworthy

**turn****Related Ideas:**

apostasy, apostate

**Definition:**

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
- To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
- To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
- "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
- An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
- The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [god](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 11:02

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

**understand**

**Related Ideas:**

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

**Definition:**

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
- Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
- "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
- "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
- An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
- To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

**Bible References:**

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

**vain****Related Ideas:**

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, vanity

**Definition:**

The term "vain" describes things that are useless or have no purpose. Vain things are worthless.

- The term "vanity" refers to worthlessness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done "in vain," it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything. It was futile.
- To "believe in vain" means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty" or "useless" or "futile" or "worthless" or "meaningless" or "of no value."
- The phrase "in vain" could be translated as "without result" or "with no result" or "for no reason" or "with no purpose."
- The term "vanity" could be translated as "pride" or "nothing worthwhile" or "hopelessness."

(See also: [god](#), [worthy](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G255, G512, G692, G889, G945, G1500, G2756, G2757, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, uselessly, vain, vain plans, vanity, without meaning

**vision****Definitions:**

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

**Translation Suggestion**

- The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
- Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: [dream](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2372, H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

vision, visions

**walk****Definition:**

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07



- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

**watch**

**Related Ideas:**

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

**Definition:**

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

- To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
- A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

**well****Related Ideas:**

cistern

**Definition:**

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
- The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [prison](#), [strife](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

**womb****Related Ideas:**

pregnant

**Definition:**

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct.
- A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
- Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.
- A woman is pregnant" if she has a baby growing her her womb."

**Picture showing location of a Womb:****Bible References:**

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H990, H2030, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

pregnant, womb, wombs

**word****Definition:**

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

- An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:02
- Acts 08:04
- Colossians 04:03
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 27:04

- John 01:03
- John 01:14
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 02:08
- Matthew 07:27

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

word, words, message, messages

**work**

**Related Ideas:**

act, deed, fellow worker

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

**world**

**Related Ideas:**

universe, worldly

**Definition:**

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

universe, world, world's, worldly

### **wrong**

#### **Related Ideas:**

defraud, hurt, mistreat, wrongdoer, wrongdoing

#### **Definition:**

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- Wrongdoing is the act of doing what is wrong. It can also refer to a behavior that is wrong.
- The term "defraud" means to illegally take money from someone by lying to them. Another word for this is "cheat."
- The terms "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
- The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4347, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H5932, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, H8604, G91, G92, G93, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G4550, G5195, G5196

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

defraud, hurt, hurting, hurts, mistreat, mistreated, wrong, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, wronged, wrongfully, wronging, wrongs

### **year**

#### **Definition:**

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought"

or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

year, years

#### **yeast**

#### **Related Ideas:**

leaven, unleavened

#### **Definition:**

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.

The ideas of "leaven" and "yeast" can also be used in figurative ways.

- The terms "leaven" and "yeast" are used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- They can also refer to false teaching which can spread to many people and influences them.
- They are also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Passover](#), [unleavened bread](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Exodus 12:08

- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

leaven, leavened, leavens, unleavened, yeast

**yoke**

**Definition:**

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term "yoke" is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term "yokefellow" to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as "fellow worker" or "fellow servant" or "coworker."
- The term "yoke" is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, "oppressive burden" or "heavy load" or "bond," depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [persecute](#), [servant](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 05:01
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 09:04
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 04:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

yoke, yoked, yoked ... together, yokes

**zeal**

**Related Ideas:**

diligence, diligent, eager, eagerness, zealous, zealously



**Definition:**

The terms "zeal" and "zealous" refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The "zeal of the Lord" or the "zeal of Yahweh" refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To "be zealous" could also be translated by, "be strongly diligent" or "make an intense effort."
- The term "zeal" could also be translated as "energetic devotion" or "eager determination" or "righteous enthusiasm."
- The phrase, "zeal for your house" could be translated, "strongly honoring your temple" or "fervent desire to take care of your house."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2734, H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G4710

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

diligence, diligent, eager, eagerness, making ... effort, zeal, zealous, zealously

---